

HIGHLY  
RECOMMENDED

FOR 2022  
EXAM

# OSWAAL BOOKS® LEARNING MADE SIMPLE

Secret code inside  
FOR 50%  
DISCOUNT  
on  
[Oswaal360.com](http://Oswaal360.com)

## CBSE QUESTION BANK CHAPTERWISE CLASS 9 TERM II SOCIAL SCIENCE

- India and the Contemporary World-I • Contemporary India
- Democratic Politics • Economics

Strictly as per the Latest CBSE Circular Number  
Acad-53/2021, dated July 22, 2021



Latest Typologies  
of Questions - MCQs,  
VSA, SA & LA

Practice Papers  
with all Typologies  
of Questions

- Revision Notes
- Modified &  
Empowered  
Mind Maps

Concept Videos  
for blended  
Learning

Strictly as per the Termwise Syllabus  
for Board Examination 2021-22

HIGHLY  
RECOMMENDED

FOR 2022  
EXAM

# OSWAAL BOOKS® LEARNING MADE SIMPLE

Secret code inside  
FOR 50%  
DISCOUNT  
on  
[Oswaal360.com](http://Oswaal360.com)

## CBSE QUESTION BANK CHAPTERWISE CLASS 9 TERM II SOCIAL SCIENCE

- India and the Contemporary World-I
- Contemporary India
- Democratic Politics
- Economics

Strictly as per the Latest CBSE Circular Number  
Acad-53/2021, dated July 22, 2021



Latest typologies of  
Questions - MCQs,  
VSA, SA & LA

Practice Papers  
with all Typologies of  
Questions

- Revision Notes
- Modified & Empowered Mind Maps

Concept Videos  
for blended  
Learning

Strictly as per the Termwise Syllabus  
for Board Examination 2021-22



1<sup>ST</sup> EDITION

YEAR 2021-22



ISBN

"978-93-5463-876-3"



**SYLLABUS  
COVERED**

**CENTRAL BOARD OF  
SECONDARY EDUCATION  
DELHI**



**COPYRIGHT  
RESERVED  
BY THE PUBLISHERS**

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without written permission from the publishers. The author and publisher will gladly receive information enabling them to rectify any error or omission in subsequent editions.



**PUBLISHED BY**

OSWAAL BOOKS &  
LEARNING PVT. LTD.



1/11, Sahitya Kunj, M.G. Road,  
Agra - 282002, (UP) India



1/1, Cambourne Business Centre  
Cambridge, Cambridgeshire  
CB 236DP, United kingdom



0562-2857671



[contact@oswaalbooks.com](mailto:contact@oswaalbooks.com)



[www.OswaalBooks.com](http://www.OswaalBooks.com)

## **DISCLAIMER**

Oswaal Books has exercised due care and caution in collecting all the data before publishing this book. In spite of this, if any omission, inaccuracy or printing error occurs with regard to the data contained in this book, Oswaal Books will not be held responsible or liable. Oswaal Books will be grateful for your suggestions which will be of great help for other readers. The Maps shown in this book are Artistic Maps only. These are solely for students Assessment.

Printed at : Amit Printing Press, Mathura

( 2 )

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Latest CBSE Circular & Syllabus released on 22nd July, 2021 for Academic Year 2021-2022 (CBSE Cir. No. Acad 53/2021)

6 – 13

## Unit 1 : India and the Contemporary World-I

### Section-I : Events and Processes

1. Socialism in Europe and the Russian Revolution	1 - 17
2. Nazism and the Rise of Hitler	18 - 34
● Map Work	35 - 36

## UNIT 2 : Contemporary India-I

3. Drainage*	37 - 51
4. Climate	52 - 66
5. Natural Vegetation and Wildlife	67 - 80
● Map Work	81 - 83

## UNIT 3 : Democratic Politics-I

6. Electoral Politics	84 - 98
7. Working of Institutions	99 - 114

## Unit 4 : Economics

8. Poverty as a Challenge	115 - 128
● Practice Test Paper-1	129 - 131
● Practice Test Paper-2	132 - 135

□□

*Note : Only Map items as given in the Map list from this chapter to be evaluated in Examination*



# Get Unlimited Access to Free Resources



at: [oswaalbooks.com/free-resources/](http://oswaalbooks.com/free-resources/)

## How? It's Easy as



Step 1: Visit [oswaalbooks.com/free-resources/](http://oswaalbooks.com/free-resources/) and choose your board and class.



Step 2: Not Registered?  
Register here quickly for the ocean of knowledge inside.  
(If registered already, simply login and move ahead)



Step 3: You are here!  
Enjoy this unlimited treat of FREE resources.

# TACKLING TERM- II BOARD EXAMS



## **Banking on Better Systems**

"Improvise, Adapt, overcome" has been the mantra of education boards and schools everywhere. Conducting lectures as well as assessments online was still pretty uncommon in our country. But now teachers and students have got familiar with the new ways. What is pushing 'Change' even further is the new National Education Policy (NEP) of 2020. The intention of shifting from rote learning to competency-based development will prove beneficial to the coming generations; and in turn, to the country.

Term-II exams will be conducted around March-April 2022 for the latter 50% of syllabus. The two hours examination will consist of MCQs (Case-based, Assertion based, and Stand-alone), very short, short and long answer questions. Though, if the Covid-19 situation does not allow for a physical exam at that time, a 90-minute online MCQs test will be conducted for Term-II, just like Term-I.

To score well in Term-II, students need to start by acquiring the latest and most relevant study material. The focus should be on conceptual clarity rather than mugging up facts. Students should find out their preparation level by conducting regular self-assessments and practicing questions from this question bank. Breaking down the syllabus in a systematic way right from the beginning will help students learn better and secure a high score.

### **Oswaal Question Banks for CBSE Term-II exams include**

1. Objective Questions based on new typologies introduced by the board
  - **MCQs (Stand- alone)**
  - **MCQs (Assertion-reason)**
  - **MCQs (Case-based)**
2. Subjective Questions
  - **Short Answer Questions**
  - **Long Answer Questions**
3. Revision Notes for in-depth study
4. Modified & Empowered Mind Maps for quick learning
5. Practice Papers for better understanding of Exam Pattern
6. Concept videos for blended learning

### **Our Heartfelt Gratitude**

Thank you to our authors, editors, and reviewers, who always work towards the goal of "**Making Learning Simple**" for every student.

Wish you all Happy Learning!

***Wish you a Successful 2021-22!!***

# CBSE CIRCULAR 2021-22



केन्द्रीय माध्यमिक शिक्षा बोर्ड  
CENTRAL BOARD OF SECONDARY EDUCATION



NO.: F1001/CBSE-Acad/Curriculum/2021

Date: July 22, 2021

Circular No: Acad- 53/2021

All the Heads of Schools affiliated to CBSE

**Subject:** Term wise syllabus for Board Examinations to be held in the academic session 2021-22 for Secondary and Senior Secondary classes and guidelines for the conduct of the Internal Assessment/Practicum/Project.

This is in continuation to Board's circular number Acad 51/2021 dated July 05, 2021 regarding Special Scheme of Assessment for Board Examination for Classes X and XII for the Session 2021- 22. The syllabus for the two terms mentioned in the scheme in all subjects for classes IX to XII are hereby notified vides this circular. In addition to syllabus for term end board examinations, guidelines for the conduct of Internal Assessment/Practicum/Project are also enclosed.

Schools are requested to share the term wise syllabus and guidelines for the conduct of board examinations and Internal Assessment / Practicum / Project available on CBSE Academic Website <http://www.cbseacademic.nic.in> at the link [http://cbseacademic.nic.in/Term-wise-curriculum\\_2022.html](http://cbseacademic.nic.in/Term-wise-curriculum_2022.html) with all their teachers and students.

(Dr. Joseph Emmanuel)  
Director (Academics)

# SYLLABUS

Latest Syllabus issued by CBSE for Academic Year 2021-22

## SOCIAL SCIENCE

Class - IX (Code No. 087)

### COURSE STRUCTURE

#### TERM-II

M. MARKS: 40			
No.	Units	No. of Periods	Marks
I	India and the Contemporary World - I	34	10
II	Contemporary India - I	24	10
III	Democratic Politics - I	18	10
IV	Economics	10	10
	<b>Total</b>	<b>86</b>	<b>40</b>

### COURSE CONTENT- IX

#### TERM-II

#### Unit 1 : India and the Contemporary World – I

Themes	Learning Objectives
<b>Section 1: Events and Processes: (Theme two and three)</b>	<i>In each of these two themes in this unit students would get familiarized with distinct ideologies, extracts of speeches, political declarations, as well as the politics of caricatures, posters and engravings. Students would learn how to interpret these kinds of historical evidences.</i>
<b>II. Socialism in Europe and the Russian Revolution</b> ● The Age of Social Change ● The Russian Revolution ● The February Revolution in Petrograd ● What Changed after October? ● The Global Influence of the Russian Revolution and the USSR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Explore the history of socialism through the study of Russian Revolution.</li><li>Familiarize with the different types of ideas that inspired the revolution.</li></ul>
<b>III. Nazism and the Rise of Hitler</b> ● Birth of the Weimar Republic ● Hitler's Rise to Power ● The Nazi Worldview ● Youth in Nazi Germany ● Ordinary People and the Crimes Against Humanity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Discuss the critical significance of Nazism in shaping the politics of modern world.</li><li>Get familiarized with the speeches and writings of Nazi Leaders.</li></ul>

# SYLLABUS

## **Unit 2 : Contemporary India – I**

<b>Themes</b>	<b>Learning Objectives</b>
<b>3. Drainage</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Major rivers and tributaries</li> <li>● Lakes</li> <li>● Role of rivers in the economy</li> <li>● Pollution of rivers</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Only Map Items as given in the Map List from this chapter to be evaluated in Examination.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Identify the river systems of the country and explain the role of rivers in the human society.</li> </ul>
<b>4. Climate</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Concept</li> <li>● Climatic Controls</li> <li>● Factors influencing India's climate</li> <li>● The Indian Monsoon</li> <li>● Distribution of Rainfall</li> <li>● Monsoon as a unifying bond</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Identify various factors influencing the climate and explain the climatic variation of our country and its impact on the life of people.</li> <li>● Explain the importance and unifying role of monsoons.</li> </ul>
<b>5. Natural Vegetation and Wild Life</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Factors affecting Vegetation</li> <li>● Vegetation types</li> <li>● Wild Life Conservation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Explain the nature of diverse flora and fauna as well as their distribution.</li> <li>● Develop concern about the need to protect the biodiversity of our country.</li> </ul>

## **Unit 3 : Democratic Politics –I**

<b>Themes</b>	<b>Learning Objectives</b>
<b>3. What is Democracy? Why Democracy?</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Why Elections?</li> <li>● What is our System of Elections?</li> <li>● What makes elections in India democratic?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Understand representative democracy via competitive partypolitics.</li> <li>● Familiarize with Indian electoral system.</li> </ul>
<b>4. Working of Institutions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● How is the major policy decision taken?</li> <li>● Parliament</li> <li>● Political Executive</li> <li>● Judiciary</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Reason out for the adoption of present Indian Electoral System.</li> <li>● Develop an appreciation of citizen's increased participation in electoral politics.</li> <li>● Recognize the significance of the Election Commission.</li> <li>● Get an overview of central governmental structures.</li> <li>● Identify the role of Parliament and its procedures.</li> <li>● Distinguish between political and permanent executive authorities and functions.</li> <li>● Understand the parliamentary system of executive's accountability to the legislature.</li> <li>● Understand the working of Indian Judiciary.</li> </ul>

# SYLLABUS

## Unit 4 : Economics

Themes	Objectives
<b>3. Poverty as a Challenge</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Two typical cases of poverty</li><li>● Poverty as seen by Social Scientists</li><li>● Poverty Estimates</li><li>● Vulnerable Groups</li><li>● Interstate disparities</li><li>● Global Poverty Scenario</li><li>● Causes of Poverty</li><li>● Anti-poverty measures</li><li>● The Challenges Ahead</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Understand poverty as a challenge.</li><li>● Identify vulnerable group and interstate disparities.</li><li>● Appreciate the initiatives of the government to alleviate poverty.</li></ul>

# **SYLLABUS**

## **LIST OF MAP ITEMS**

### **CLASS IX (2021-22)**

#### **TERM- II**

---

#### **SUBJECT - HISTORY**

##### **Chapter-2: Socialism in Europe and the Russian Revolution**

Outline Political Map of World (For locating and labeling / Identification)

- Major countries of First World War

(Central Powers and Allied Powers)

Central Powers - Germany, Austria-Hungary, Turkey (Ottoman Empire)

Allied Powers - France, England, Russia, U.S.A.

##### **Chapter-3: Nazism and Rise of Hitler**

Outline Political Map of World (For locating and labeling / Identification)

- Major countries of Second World War

Axis Powers – Germany, Italy, Japan

Allied Powers – UK, France, Former USSR, USA

- Territories under German expansion (Nazi Power)

Austria, Poland, Czechoslovakia (only Slovakia shown in the map), Denmark, Lithuania, France, Belgium

#### **SUBJECT – GEOGRAPHY (Outline Political Map of India)**

##### **Chapter -3: Drainage**

- Rivers: (Identification only)

○ The Himalayan River Systems-The Indus, The Ganges, and The Satluj

○ The Peninsular rivers-The Narmada, The Tapi, The Kaveri, The Krishna, The Godavari, The Mahanadi

- Lakes: Wular, Pulicat, Sambhar, Chilika

##### **Chapter - 4: Climate**

- Areas receiving rainfall less than 20 cm and over 400 cm (Identification only)

##### **Chapter - 5: Natural Vegetation and Wild Life**

- Vegetation Type: Tropical Evergreen Forest, Tropical Deciduous Forest, Thorn Forest, Montane Forests and Mangrove- For identification only

- National Parks: Corbett, Kaziranga, Ranthambor, Shivpuri, Kanha, Simlipal & Manas

- Bird Sanctuaries: Bharatpur and Ranganthitto

- Wild Life Sanctuaries: Sariska, Mudumalai, Rajaji, Dachigam (Location and Labelling)

# SYLLABUS

## INTERNAL ASSESSMENT

	<b>Marks</b>	<b>Description</b>	
<b>Periodic Assessment</b>	10 Marks	Pen Paper Test Assessment using multiple strategies For example, Quiz, Debate, Role Play, Viva, Group Discussion, Visual Expression, Interactive Bulletin Boards, Gallery Walks, Exit Cards, Concept Maps, Peer Assessment, Self-Assessment, etc.	<b>5 marks</b> <b>5 marks</b>
<b>Portfolio</b>	5 Marks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Classwork and Assignments</li><li>● Any exemplary work done by the student</li><li>● Reflections, Narrations, Journals, etc.</li><li>● Achievements of the student in the subject throughout the year</li><li>● Participation of the student in different activities like Heritage India Quiz</li></ul>	
<b>Subject Enrichment Activity</b>	5 Marks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Project Work</li></ul>	
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>20 MARKS</b>		

# SYLLABUS

## PROJECT WORK CLASS IX (2021-22)

<b>05 Marks</b>												
1. Every student has to compulsorily undertake one project on Disaster Management.												
2. <b>Objectives:</b> The main objectives of giving project work on Disaster Management to the students are to: a. create awareness in them about different disasters, their consequences and management b. prepare them in advance to face such situations c. ensure their participation in disaster mitigation plans d. enable them to create awareness and preparedness among the community.												
3. The project work should also help in enhancing the Life Skills of the students.												
4. If possible, <i>different forms of art</i> may be integrated in the project work.												
5. In order to realize the expected objectives completely, it would be required of the Principals / Teachers to muster support from various local authorities and organizations like the Disaster Management Authorities, Relief, Rehabilitation and the Disaster Management Departments of the States, Office of the District Magistrate/ Deputy Commissioners, Fire Service, Police, Civil Defense etc. in the area where the schools are located.												
6. The distribution of marks over different aspects relating to Project Work is as follows:												
<table border="1"><thead><tr><th style="text-align: center;">S.No.</th><th style="text-align: center;">Aspects</th><th style="text-align: center;">Marks</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td style="text-align: center;">a</td><td>Content accuracy, originality and analysis</td><td style="text-align: center;">2</td></tr><tr><td style="text-align: center;">b</td><td>Presentation and creativity</td><td style="text-align: center;">2</td></tr><tr><td style="text-align: center;">c</td><td>Viva Voce</td><td style="text-align: center;">1</td></tr></tbody></table>	S.No.	Aspects	Marks	a	Content accuracy, originality and analysis	2	b	Presentation and creativity	2	c	Viva Voce	1
S.No.	Aspects	Marks										
a	Content accuracy, originality and analysis	2										
b	Presentation and creativity	2										
c	Viva Voce	1										
7. The project carried out by the students should subsequently be shared among themselves through interactive sessions such as exhibitions, panel discussions, etc.												
8. All documents pertaining to assessment under this activity should be meticulously maintained by the schools.												
9. A Summary Report should be prepared highlighting: a. objectives realized through individual work and group interactions b. calendar of activities c. innovative ideas generated in the process (like comic strips, drawings, illustrations, script play etc.); d. list of questions asked in viva voce.												

# SYLLABUS

- 10.** It is to be noted here by all the teachers and students that the projects and models prepared should be made from eco-friendly products without incurring too much expenditure.
- 11.** The Project Report should be handwritten by the students themselves.
- 12.** The record of the project work (internal assessment) should be kept for a period of three months for verification, if any.

*Note: Please procure latest reprinted edition of prescribed NCERT textbooks.*





# Be mindful. Be grateful. Be positive. Be true. Be Kind

**01**

Three things  
that make  
you special

**02**

Three people  
you are  
grateful for  
and why

**03**

Three simple  
things you  
are grateful  
for

**04**

A challenging  
experience  
that made  
you stronger

**05**

Three ways to  
inject gratitude  
into a current  
challenge

**06**

Describe the  
last time you did  
something nice  
for someone

**07**

A fear you  
have  
overcome

**08**

Three  
activities you  
enjoy most  
and why

**09**

What made  
you smile  
today?

**10**

Three things  
you love about  
your family

**11**

What is your  
favorite place,  
and why?

**12**

Three things  
you love most  
about  
yourself

**13**

The last time  
you were  
overcome  
with joy

**14**

A risk you are  
grateful you  
took and why

**15**

Three everyday  
items you are  
grateful for

**16**

Three songs  
that bring you  
joy

**17**

What skill do you  
have that you  
are grateful for  
and why?

**18**

One luxury  
you are  
thankful for

**19**

Describe a  
rejection you  
are grateful  
for

**20**

Three things  
about your  
body you are  
grateful for

**21**

What are you  
most grateful  
for in your daily  
life?

**22**

Three things you  
are grateful for  
about where  
you live

**23**

Three items in  
your home  
you are  
grateful for

**24**

Say thank you  
to someone

**25**

Something in  
nature you are  
grateful for

**26**

A person in your  
past you are  
grateful for

**27**

Something at  
school you're  
grateful for

**28**

Describe the  
last time you  
laughed so  
hard you cried

**29**

What is your  
proudest  
accomplishment?

**30**

Three things  
you want to  
manifest

I courageously move  
in the direction of my  
dreams

I am Supported  
fully by the  
universe

I realize what I  
cannot Control  
and let the good  
things flow

I am wrapped in the  
loving energy of the  
universe

All of my  
thoughts are  
aligned with my  
desires

I allow my  
desires to  
flow to me  
now

## Affirmations for the new "YOU"

I am open to  
new experiences  
and welcome  
abundance into  
my life

/// Accept yourself, love  
yourself, and keep  
moving forward. If you  
want to fly, you have to  
give up what weighs  
you down.

I effortlessly  
attract my  
desires

I have the power to  
shift my mindset and  
see the good in  
everything.

When I let go, I create  
space for something  
better.

## Exclusive School Books Suppliers

<b>HYDERABAD</b>	Sri Balaji Book Depot, 9676996199, (040) 27613300	<b>KOLHAPUR</b>	MAHARASHTRA
<b>GUNTUR</b>	Y Renuka Devi, 9490450750	<b>PUNE</b>	Ashish Book Depot, 7798420420, Jai Book Co., 9422046679 Goel Mini Market, 9890825884, 9028943031, Praveen Sales, 9890683475
<b>VIJAYAWADA</b>	Sri Vikas Book Centre, 9848571114, 9440715700	<b>JALNA</b>	Vardhaman Educational, 9834678521
<b>WEST KAMENG</b>	Dutta Book Stall, 8729948473	<b>MUMBAI</b>	Anil Paper Mart, 942272522, (02482) 230733 Shalar Book, 8779213494
<b>JAMNAGAR</b>	Vidyaarthi Book Centre (S.S.D.), 9879014367	<b>WARDHA</b>	Unique Traders, (07152) 243617, 8600044411, 9960644752
<b>RAJKOT</b>	Royal Stationery, 9824207514	<b>KOLKATA</b>	<b>WEST BENGAL</b>
<b>TUMKUR</b>	KARNATAKA		Eureka book Emporium, (033) 25934001, 9051532860 Schoolwale & Company, 9731715655
<b>GULBARGA</b>	Palasandra Promoters, 9448214377, (0816) 2273220		<b>MANIPUR</b>
<b>SALEM</b>	L.E. Bhavikatti, (08472) 261400, 9880737400		Jain Book Shop, 9856031157
<b>PANCHKULA</b>	<b>TAMIL NADU</b>		<b>UTTAR PRADESH</b>
<b>INDORE</b>	Salem Book House, 9443324584, (0427) 2411315		Pustak Bhawan, 9936500469 Maheshwari Pustak Bhandar, 9760602503 Ramji & Sons, 9026303241
	<b>HARYANA</b>		
	Raghubar Dass Sat Prakash, 8950055303		
	<b>MADHYA PRADESH</b>		
	Raghav Pustak Sadan (S.S.D.), 9229171880		

## OUR DISTRIBUTORS

<b>ANDHRA PRADESH</b>	<b>PUNE</b>	Natraj Book Depot, (020) 24485054, 9890054092
<b>GUNTUR</b>		Akshar Books & Stationary, 7385089789, Kirti Book Agencies, 9881190907, The Wisdom Store, 9822588775, 02025433344 Praveen Sales, 9890683475
<b>HYDERABAD</b>		
<b>VIJAYAWADA</b>		Abhang Pustakalaya, 9823470756
<b>VISAKHAPATNAM</b>		
<b>ASSAM</b>	<b>NAGPUR</b>	Laxmi Pustakalay Stationers, (0712) 2727354, Novelty Book Depot, 9657690200 Vijay Book Depot, 9860122094, (0712) 2520496, 2534217, Karmveer Book, 9923966466
<b>GUWAHATI</b>	<b>DHULE</b>	Navjeevan Book Stall, 7020525561
<b>PATNA</b>	<b>BHUSAVAL</b>	Anil Book Depot, 9403942906
<b>MUZAFFARPUR</b>	<b>YAVATMAL</b>	Shri Ganesh, 9423131275
<b>PURNIA</b>	<b>CUTTACK</b>	<b>ODISHA</b>
<b>CHATTISGARH</b>	<b>BHUBANESHWAR</b>	A. K. Mishra Agencies, 9437025991, 9437081319
<b>RAIPUR</b>	<b>BARIPADA</b>	M/s Pragnya, 8847888616, 9437943777
<b>DURG</b>	<b>BALASORE</b>	Trimurti Book World, 9437034735
<b>DELHI</b>		Sri Maa Store, 9668822246
<b>AHMEDABAD</b>	<b>LUDHIANA</b>	<b>PUNJAB</b>
<b>VADODARA</b>	<b>JALANDHAR</b>	Amit Book Depot, 9815807871 Cheap Book Store, 987223458, 9878258592, Gaurav the Book World, 9478821183, Subhash Book Depot, 9876453625 City Book Shop, 9417440753 Adarsh Enterprises, 9814347613
<b>VAPI</b>		
<b>NAVSARI</b>	<b>PATIALA</b>	<b>RAJASTHAN</b>
<b>JHARKHAND</b>	<b>KOTA</b>	Raj Traders, (0744) 2429090, 9309232829, 8005529594, Radhe Traders, 8769802001, Perfect Stationers & Gen. Shoppe, 9829863904 Vardham Book Depot, 9571365020, Bhandari Stationers, 9001094271
<b>BOKARO</b>	<b>BHILWARA</b>	Nakoda Book Depot, (01482) 243653, 9214983594
<b>DHANBAD</b>	<b>JAIPUR</b>	J K Enterprises, 9460983939, 9414782130, Manohar Book Dist., 9414072321 Saraswati Book House, (0141) 2610823, 9829811155 Ravi Enterprises (0141) 2602517, 9828944479
<b>RANCHI</b>		
<b>KARNATAKA</b>	<b>COIMBATORE</b>	<b>TAMIL NADU</b>
<b>HUBLI</b>	<b>CHENNAI</b>	Majestic Book House, (0422) 2384333 Arraba Book Traders, (044) 25387868, 9841459105, M.R. Book Store (044)
<b>BELLARY</b>		25364596, Indian Book House, (044) 24327784, 9094129595, Kalaimagal Store, (044) 5544072, 9940619404, Vijaya Stores, 9381037417 Bookmark It-Books & Stat. Store, 7305151653, M.K. Store, 9840030099 Tiger Books Pvt. Ltd., 9710447000
<b>KERALA</b>	<b>PUDUCHERRY</b>	Sri Saraswathi Book Stall, (04132) 222283, 9092626287 Bharat & Co., 9095552155
<b>ERNAKULAM</b>	<b>OTY</b>	<b>TRIPURA</b>
<b>KADAVANTHRA</b>		Book Corner, 986538594, Book Emporium, (0381) 2391509, 9436460399
<b>JOMES SRINILAYAM</b>	<b>AGARTALA</b>	<b>UTTAR PRADESH</b>
<b>KOTTAYAM</b>	<b>AGRA</b>	Sparsh Book Agency, 9412257817 Om Pustak Mandir, (0562) 2464014, 9319117771, Panchsheel Books, 9412257961, 9412257962, Ajay Book Depot, 9411205449
<b>TRIVANDRUM</b>		
<b>CALICUT</b>	<b>ALIGARH</b>	Shaligram Agencies, (0571) 2421887, 9412317800
<b>MORENA</b>	<b>ALLAHABAD</b>	Mehrotra Book Agency, (0532) 2266865, 9415636890
<b>GWALIOR</b>	<b>AZAMGARH</b>	Sasta Sahitya Sadan, 9450029674
<b>INDORE</b>	<b>GORAKHPUR</b>	Atul Pustak Bhandar, 9935210622, Central Book, 9935454590
<b>JABALPUR</b>	<b>LUCKNOW</b>	Rama Book Depot (Retail), (0522) 4080133, 9956922433, Vyapar Sadan, 7607102462 Azad Book Depot Pvt. Ltd., 7317000250
<b>BHOPAL</b>	<b>MORENA</b>	Shri Ram Book Store, 9424603124
<b>GOA</b>	<b>MEERUT</b>	Ideal Book Depot, (0121) 4059252, 9837066307, Garg Book Depot, 9458553028
<b>MARGO</b>	<b>NOIDA</b>	Prozo (Global Edul Share Pvt. Ltd), 9899037390, 8587837835, 9318395520
<b>ROHTAK</b>	<b>VARANASI</b>	Goyal Books Overseas, (0120) 465555, 987387003
<b>GURGAON</b>		Bokaro Student Friends, (0542) 2401250, 8299344607
<b>AMBALA</b>	<b>RUDRAPUR</b>	Gupta Books, 9918155500, 8707225564, Book Man & Company, 9935194495
<b>AHMEDNAGAR</b>	<b>DEHRADUN</b>	
<b>MUMBAI</b>	<b>KASHIPUR</b>	<b>UTTARAKHAND</b>
		Vinod Pustak Bhandar, 9927376234/9837119804 Brothers Pustak Bhandar, 9897833382, Mittal Book, 9837223825
	<b>KOLKATA</b>	Neelam Book Depot, 9927305987
		<b>WEST BENGAL</b>
	<b>SILIGURI</b>	Oriental Publishers & Distributor (033) 40628367, Katha 'O' Kahani, (033) 22196313, 22419071, Saha Book House, (033) 22193671, 9333416484, United Book House, 9831344622 Agarwal Book House, (0353) 2535274, 9832038727

**UNIT-I : India and The Contemporary World-I**  
**Section-I : Events and Processes**

**CHAPTER**

**1**

# **SOCIALISM IN EUROPE AND THE RUSSIAN REVOLUTION**

## **Syllabus**

- *The Age of Social Change.*
- *The Russian Revolution.*
- *The February Revolution in Petrograd.*
- *What Changed after October?*
- *The Global Influence of the Russian Revolution and the USSR.*



## **Learning Outcomes**

- *Explore the history of socialism through the study of Russian Revolution.*
- *Familiarize with the different types of ideas that inspired the revolution.*

## **Revision Notes**

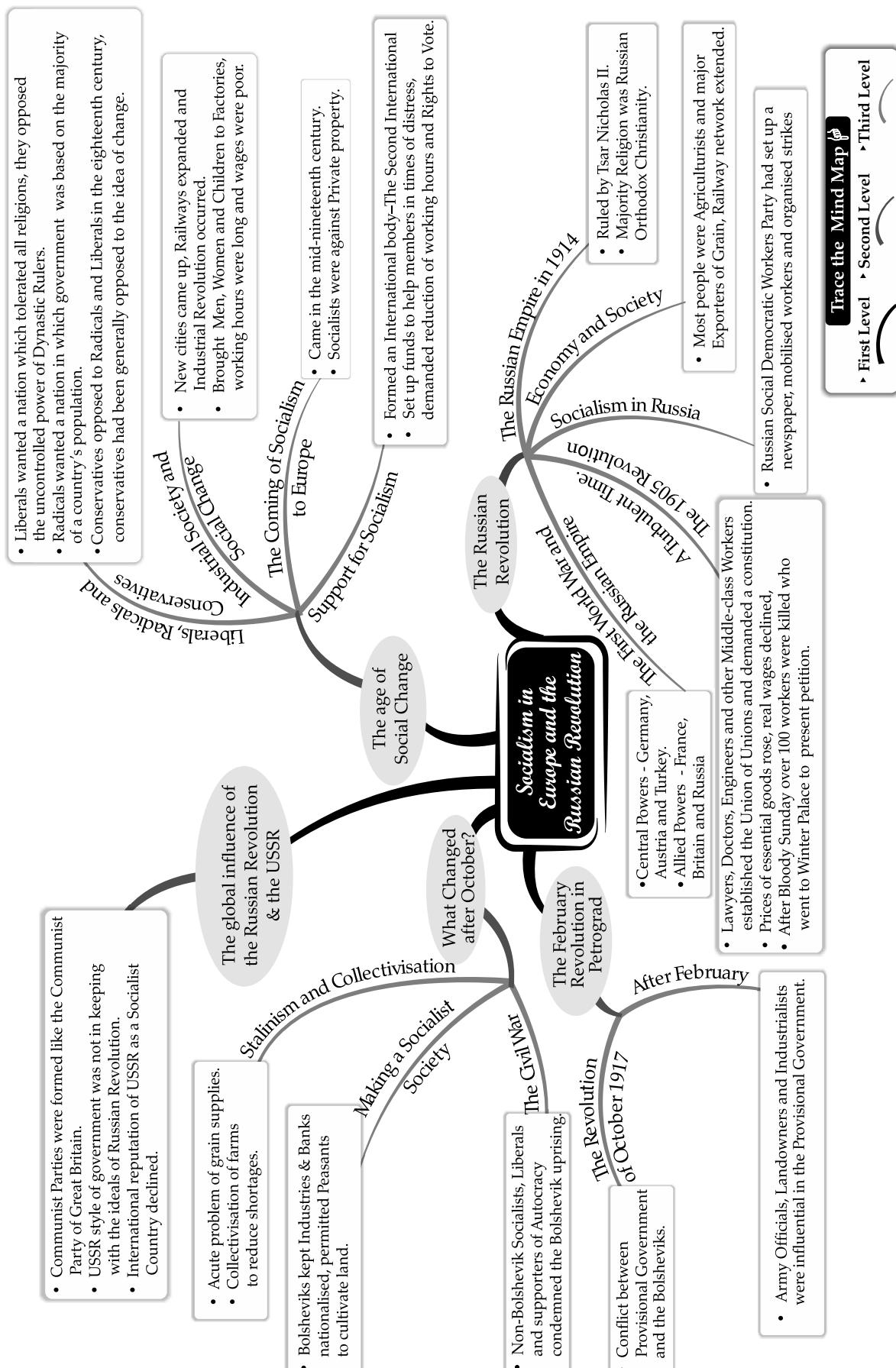
### **The Age of Social Change**

- The French Revolution opened up the possibility of creating a dramatic change in the way in which society was structured.
- Through the revolution in Russia, socialism became one of the most significant and powerful ideas to shape society in the twentieth century.
- Views of Liberals.
  - Liberals wanted a nation which tolerated all religions.
  - Liberals also opposed the uncontrolled power of dynastic rulers.
  - They wanted to safeguard the rights of individuals against governments.
  - They argued for a representative, elected Parliamentary Government, subject to laws interpreted by a well-trained Judiciary that was independent of rulers and officials.
  - However, they were not 'democrats'. They did not believe in Universal Adult Franchise.
- Views of Radicals :
  - The Radicals wanted a nation in which government was based on the majority of a country's population.
  - Unlike Liberals, they opposed the privileges of big landowners and wealthy factory owners.
  - They were not against the existence of private property, but disliked concentration of property in the hands of a few.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topic



Russian  
Revolution



Trace the Mind Map ↗  
 • First Level   • Second Level   • Third Level ↘

➤ **Views of Conservatives :**

- Conservatives were opposed to Radicals and Liberals. After the nineteenth century, they accepted changes but also believed that the past needed to be respected and change should begin slowly.

**Industrial Society and Social Change**

- These political trends were signs of a new time. It was a time of profound social and economic changes. It was a time when the Industrial revolution took place.
- Industrialization brought men, women and children to factories. Working hours were often long and wages were poor. Unemployment was common.
- Liberals and Radicals searched for solutions to these issues. Many working men and women who wanted changes in the world, rallied around liberal and radical groups and parties in the early nineteenth century.
- After 1815, Giuseppe Mazzini, an Italian nationalist, conspired with others to form Italy where all citizens would have equal rights.

Scan to know more about this topic



Liberals,  
Radicals and  
Conservatives

**The Coming of Socialism in Europe**

- By the mid-nineteenth century in Europe, socialism was a well-known body of ideas that attracted widespread attention.
- Socialists were against private property and saw it as the root of all social ills of that time.
- Some Socialists believed in the idea of 'Cooperatives'. Robert Owen (1771-1858), a leading English manufacturer, sought to build a Cooperative Community called New Harmony in Indiana (USA).
- In France, for instance, Louis Blanc (1813-1882) wanted the government to encourage cooperatives and replace Capitalist Enterprises. These Cooperatives were to be associations of people who produced goods together and divided the profits according to the work done by members.
- Karl Marx (1818-1883) and Friedrich Engels (1820-1895) added other ideas to this body of arguments. Marx argued that Industrial Society was Capitalist.
- **Idea of Communist Society :**
  - Industrial Society was capitalist. Capitalists owned the capital invested in factories and the profit of Capitalists was produced by workers.
  - The conditions of workers could not improve as long as this profit was accumulated by Private Capitalists.
  - Workers had to overthrow Capitalism and the rule of Private Property.
  - Marx believed that to free themselves from capitalist exploitation, workers had to construct a radically socialist society where all properties were socially controlled. This would be a 'Communist Society.'
  - He was convinced that workers would triumph in their conflict with Capitalists. A Communist Society was the natural society of the future.

**Support for Socialism**

- By the 1870s, socialist ideas spread through Europe. To coordinate their efforts, socialists formed an international body—namely, the Second International. Workers in England and Germany began forming associations to fight for better living and working conditions.
- By 1905, Socialists and Trade Unionists formed a Labour Party in Britain and a Socialist Party in France. However, till 1914, Socialists never succeeded in forming a government in Europe.

## The Russian Revolution

- Socialists took over the government in Russia through the October Revolution of 1917. The fall of monarchy in February 1917 and the events of October are normally called the Russian Revolution.

Scan to know more about this topic



The Russian Revolution- 1917

**The Russian Empire in 1914**

- In 1914, Tsar Nicholas II ruled over Russia and its empire. Besides the territory around Moscow, the Russian empire included present-day Finland, Latvia, Lithuania, Estonia, parts of Poland, Ukraine and Belarus. It stretched to the Pacific and comprised today's Central Asian states, as well as Georgia, Armenia and Azerbaijan.
- The majority religion was Russian Orthodox Christianity.

**Economy and Society**

- In the beginning of the twentieth century, the vast majority of Russia's people were agriculturists.
- Russia was a major exporter of grain.
- Industry was found in pockets. Prominent industrial areas were St. Petersburg and Moscow.
- Most industries were the private properties of industrialists. Government supervised large factories to ensure minimum wages and limited hours of work.

- In craft units and small workshops, the working day was sometimes of 15 hours, compared with 10 or 12 hours in factories.
- Women made up 31 per cent of the factory labour force by 1914, but they were paid less than men (between half and three-quarters of a man's wage).
- Peasants cultivated most of the land but the nobility, the Crown and the Orthodox Church owned large properties.
- Nobles got power and position through their services to the Tsar.
- In Russia, peasants wanted the land of the Nobles.

### **Socialism in Russia**

- The Russian Social Democratic Labour Party was founded in 1898 by the Socialists who respected Marx's ideas. It set up a newspaper, mobilized workers and organized strikes.
- Socialists formed the Socialist Revolutionary Party in 1900. This party struggled for Peasants' rights and demanded that land belonging to Nobles be transferred to Peasants.
- Vladimir Lenin (who led the Bolshevik group), thought that in a repressive society like Tsarist Russia, the party should be disciplined and should control the number and quality of its members.

### **A Turbulent Time : The 1905 Revolution**

- Russia was an Autocracy.
- The year 1904 was a particularly bad one for Russian workers. Prices of essential goods rose so rapidly that real wages declined by 20 per cent. The membership of workers' associations rose dramatically.
- When four members of the 'Assembly of Russian Workers' which had been formed in 1904, were dismissed at the Putilov Iron Works, there was a call for industrial action.
- Over the next few days, more than 110,000 workers in St. Petersburg went on strike demanding a reduction in the working day to eight hours, an increase in wages and improvement in working conditions.
- When the procession of workers led by Father Gapon reached the Winter Palace, it was attacked by the Police and the Cossacks. Over 100 workers were killed and about 300 wounded. The incident, known as Bloody Sunday, started a series of events that became known as the 1905 Revolution.
- Strikes took place all over the country and universities closed down when student bodies staged walkouts, complaining about the lack of civil liberties.
- Lawyers, Doctors, Engineers and other Middle-class Workers established the Union of Unions and demanded a Constituent Assembly.
- During the 1905 Revolution, the Tsar allowed the creation of an elected consultative Parliament or Duma.



### **The First World War and the Russian Empire**

1. In 1914, war broke out between two European Alliances –Germany, Austria and Turkey (The Central Powers) and France, Britain and Russia (later Italy and Romania). This was the First World War.
2. In Russia, the war was initially popular and people rallied around Tsar Nicholas II.
3. Defeats were shocking and demoralizing. Russia's armies lost badly in Germany and Austria between 1914 and 1916. There were over 7 million casualties by 1917.
4. The war also had a severe impact on industry. Russia's own industries were few in number and the country was cut off from other suppliers of industrial goods by German control of the Baltic Sea.
5. By 1916, Railway Lines began to break down.
6. Able-bodied men were called up to the war. As a result, there was labour shortage and small workshops producing essentials were shut down.
7. Large supplies of grain were sent to feed the army. For the people in the cities, bread and flour became scarce.

## **The February Revolution in Petrograd**

- In the winter of 1917, conditions in the capital, Petrograd, were grim.
- The layout of the city seemed to emphasize the divisions among its people. The workers' quarters and factories were located on the right bank of the River Neva. On the left bank were the fashionable areas, the Winter Palace, and official buildings, including the palace where the Duma met.
- In February 1917, food shortages were deeply felt in the workers' quarters.
- On 22<sup>nd</sup> February, a lockout took place at a factory on the right bank. The next day, workers in fifty factories called a strike in sympathy.
- In many factories, women led the way to strikes. This came to be called the 'International Women's Day.'
- Finally, on Sunday, 25<sup>th</sup> February, the government suspended the Duma.

- Demonstrators returned in force to the streets of the left bank on the 26<sup>th</sup>. On the 27<sup>th</sup>, the Police Headquarters were ransacked. The streets thronged with people raising slogans about bread, wages, better hours and democracy.
- By that evening, soldiers and striking workers had gathered to form a 'Soviet' or 'Council' in the same building as the Duma met. This was the Petrograd Soviet.
- Finally, the Tsar abdicated on 2<sup>nd</sup> March.
- Soviet leaders and Duma leaders formed a Provisional Government to run the country.
- Petrograd had led the February Revolution that brought down the Monarchy in February 1917.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topic



The February  
Revolution

### *After February*

- Army Officials, Landowners and Industrialists were influential in the Provisional Government. But the Liberals as well as Socialists among them worked towards an elected government.
- In April 1917, the Bolshevik leader Vladimir Lenin returned to Russia from his exile.
- Three demands of Lenin's 'April Theses' :
  - He felt, it was time for the Soviets to take over power. He declared that the war be brought to a close.
  - Land should be transferred to the peasants.
  - Banks should be nationalized.

### *The Revolution of October 1917*

- As the conflict between the Provisional Government and the Bolsheviks grew, Lenin feared the Provisional Government would set up a Dictatorship.
- On 16<sup>th</sup> October 1917, Lenin persuaded the Petrograd Soviet and the Bolshevik Party to agree to a socialist seizure of power.
- A Military Revolutionary Committee was appointed by the Soviet under Leon Trotsky to organize the seizure.
- At a meeting of the All Russian Congress of Soviets in Petrograd, the majority approved the Bolshevik action.

## Changes after October and the Global influence

### *Changes after October*

- The Bolsheviks were totally opposed to private property. Most industries and banks were nationalised in November 1917.
- Land was declared social property and peasants were allowed to seize the land of the nobility.
- In cities, Bolsheviks enforced the partition of large houses according to family requirements. They banned the use of the old titles of Aristocracy.
- The Bolshevik Party was renamed the Russian Communist Party (Bolshevik).
- In November 1917, the Bolsheviks conducted the elections to the Constituent Assembly, but they failed to gain majority support.
- In the years that followed, the Bolsheviks became the only Party to participate in the elections to the All Russian Congress of Soviets, which became the Parliament of the country. Russia became a One-Party State.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topic



Changed after  
October

### *The Civil War*

- Non-Bolshevik Socialists, Liberals and Supporters of Autocracy condemned the Bolshevik uprising. Their leaders moved to south Russia and organised troops to fight the Bolsheviks (the 'Reds').
- During 1918 and 1919, the 'Greens' (Socialist Revolutionaries) and 'Whites' (Pro-Tsarists) controlled most of the Russian Empire.
- As these troops and the Bolsheviks fought a civil war, looting, banditry and famine became common.
- By January 1920, the Bolsheviks controlled most of the former Russian Empire. They succeeded due to cooperation with non-Russian nationalities and Muslim Jadidists.
- Most non-Russian nationalities were given political autonomy in the Soviet Union (USSR) – the state the Bolsheviks created from the Russian Empire in December 1922.

### Making a Socialist Society

- A process of centralised planning was introduced. Officials assessed how the economy could work and set targets for a five-year period. On this basis, they made the Five Year Plans.
- Industrial production increased between 1929 and 1933 by 100 per cent in the case of oil, coal and steel.
- An extended Schooling System developed and arrangements were made for Factory Workers and Peasants to enter up Universities.
- Crèches were established in factories for the children of women workers.
- Cheap public health care was provided. Model living quarters were set up for workers.

Scan to know more about this topic  
  
**Stalinism and Collectivisation**

### Stalinism and Collectivisation

- By 1927- 1928, the towns in Soviet Russia were facing an acute problem of grain supplies. The government fixed prices at which grain must be sold, but the Peasants refused to sell their grain to Government Buyers at these prices.
- Stalin, who headed the party after the death of Lenin, introduced firm emergency measures.
- In 1928, Party Members toured the grain-producing areas, supervising enforced grain collections, and raiding 'Kulaks', – the name given to well-to-do Peasants.
- To develop modern farms and run them along industrial lines with machinery, it was necessary to 'eliminate Kulaks', take away land from Peasants, and establish state-controlled large farms.
- From 1929, the Party forced all peasants to cultivate in collective farms (Kolkhoz).
- The bulk of land and implements were transferred to the ownership of collective farms.
- Those who resisted Collectivisation were severely punished. Many were deported and exiled.
- In spite of collectivisation, production did not increase immediately and due to bad harvests of 1930-1933 over 4 million people died.
- Throughout the country, accusations were made, and by 1939, over 2 million were in prisons or labour camps.

Scan to know more about this topic  
  
**Global Influence**

### The Global Influence of the Russian Revolution and the USSR

- In many countries, communist parties were formed like the Communist Party of Great Britain.
- Many non- Russians from outside the USSR participated in the Conference of the Peoples of the East (1920) and the Bolshevik-founded Comintern (an International Union of Pro-Bolshevik Socialist Parties).
- By the time of the outbreak of the Second World War, the USSR had given Socialism a global face and world stature.

## Know the Terms

- **Autocracy** : A country ruled by a person who has complete power.
- **Autonomy** : The right to govern themselves.
- **Suffragette movement** : A movement to give women the right to vote.
- **Bolsheviks** : A fraction of the Russian Social Democratic Labour Party led by Lenin based on the ideology of Marx and Engels. It seized power in the October Revolution of 1917.
- **Bloody Sunday** : A mass of peaceful workers were fired upon by the Russian troops when they went to the Winter Palace to present a petition to the Tsar. This incident occurred on Sunday, 22<sup>nd</sup> January, 1905.
- **Collective farms** : A farm or a group of farms organized as a unit and managed and worked cooperatively by a group of Farmers under government supervision.
- **Duma** : Russian Parliament of Legislature.
- **Divine Right Theory** : The theory that believed that the King was the Representative of the 'God on Earth' and no one has the right to deny him.
- **Exiled** : Forced to live away from one's own country.
- **Jadidists** : Muslim reformers in the Empire of Russia.
- **Real wage** : Reflects the quantities of goods which the wages will actually buy.
- **Red Army** : The army of revolutionary Russia who fought against the Tsar's Army.

- **Romanov** : The Second dynasty after Rurik which ruled over Russia until the abdication of Tsar Nicholas II in 1917.
- **Monk** : A member of a religious community of men typically living under vows of poverty, chastity and obedience.
- **Tsar** : Emperor of Russia.
- **Refugee** : A person who has been forced to leave his/her country in order to escape war, persecution, or natural disaster.
- **Soviet** : Council of workers.
- **Suffragette** : A Movement to give woman the Right to Vote.
- **Serfdom** : Russian type of feudalism under which peasants worked for the landlord in exchange for food and shelter.

## Know the Dates

- **1855** : Tsar Alexander II started his reign as Tsar of Russia.
- **1861** : Alexander issued a manifesto wherein Serfs were emancipated.
- **1881** : Alexander II was assassinated.
- **1883** : Formation of first Russian Marxist group.
- **1898** : Formation of Russian Social Democratic Labour Party.
- **1900** : Formation of Socialist Revolutionary Party.
- **1903** : Second Congress of Russian Social Democratic Labour Party.
- **1904-1905** : Russo- Japanese War.
- **1905** : Russian Revolution. A strike began at the Putilov Iron Works in St. Petersburg.
- **3<sup>rd</sup> January, 1905** : Russian Revolution.
- **22<sup>nd</sup> January, 1905** : (Bloody Sunday) peaceful demonstrators arrived at the Winter Palace in St. Petersburg to present a petition to the Tsar.
- **April 1905** : The first Duma was called.
- **July 1905** : The first Duma was dissolved.
- **1914** : Tsar Nicholas II ruled Russia and its empire.
- **22<sup>nd</sup> to 27<sup>th</sup> February, 1917** : February Revolution
- **2<sup>nd</sup> March, 1917** : Application of the Tsar
- **3<sup>rd</sup> April 1917** : Return of Lenin and April Theses
- **5<sup>th</sup> May 1917** : Formation of new Provisional Government
- **3<sup>rd</sup> June 1917** : First All- Russian Congress of Soviets announced in Petrograd
- **28<sup>th</sup> July 1914** : Beginning of the First World War.
- **11<sup>th</sup> November 1918** : End of the First World War.
- **1917-1920** : Civil War broke out in Russia.
- **1919** : Formation of Comintern.
- **1929** : Beginning of Collectivization.
- **1991** : Break up of Soviet Union.



### (A) OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

1 Mark Each



#### Stand Alone MCQs

1. Which among the following groups was against any kind of political or social change?

- (A) Nationalists
- (B) Radicals
- (C) Liberals
- (D) Conservatives

Ans. Option (D) is correct.

**Explanation:** Conservatives were opposed to radicals and liberals. After the French Revolution, however, even conservatives had opened their minds to the need for change. In the eighteenth century conservatives were opposed to the idea of political or social change. By the nineteenth century they accepted that some change was inevitable but believed that the past had to be respected and change had to be through a slow process.

**2. Which of the following factors made Autocracy unpopular in Russia?**

- (A) The German origin of the Tsarina Alexandra
- (B) Poor advisors like the Monk Rasputin
- (C) The huge cost of fighting in the World War I
- (D) Both (A) and (B)

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Russia was an Autocracy. The Tsarina Alexandra's German origins and poor advisers, especially a monk called Rasputin, made the Autocracy unpopular.

**3. The Russian Social Democratic Workers Party was founded in \_\_\_\_\_.**

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| (A) 1898 | (B) 1900 |
| (C) 1905 | (D) 1907 |

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** All political parties were illegal in Russia before 1914.

The Russian Social Democratic Workers Party was founded in 1898 by Socialists who respected Marx's ideas. However, because of government policy, it had to operate as an illegal organisation.

**4. Who started 'Collectivisation Programme' in Russia?**

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| (A) Lenin    | (B) Karl Marx |
| (C) Rasputin | (D) Stalin    |

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** By 1927- 1928, the towns in Soviet Russia were facing an acute problem of grain supplies. The government fixed prices at which grain must be sold, but the peasants refused to sell their grain to the government. Stalin, who headed the party after the death of Lenin, introduced firm emergency measures. He started 'Collectivisation Programme' in Russia.

**Q5. By which name the well-to-do Peasants in Russia called?**

- |            |                        |
|------------|------------------------|
| (A) Kulaks | (B) Kolkhoj            |
| (C) Serfs  | (D) None of the above. |

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Kulaks were wealthy or prosperous peasant, generally characterized as one who owned a relatively large farm and several head of cattle and horses and who was financially capable of employing hired labour and leasing land.

**6. Who was Marfa Vasileva?**

- (A) She was the leader of the Revolutionaries.
- (B) She was a brave worker who organised a successful strike.
- (C) She threw a bomb at the Russian Tsar.
- (D) None of the above

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**7. Identify the following image.**

- (A) Stalin
- (B) Lenin
- (C) Karl Marx
- (D) Friedrich Engels



**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Joseph Stalin was a Georgian revolutionary and Soviet political leader who governed the Soviet Union from 1924 until he died in 1953. He served as both General Secretary of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union and Chairman of the Council of Ministers of the Soviet Union.

**8. Who had to build a Cooperative Community called New Harmony in Indiana?**

- |                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| (A) Karl Marx   | (B) Friedrich Engels |
| (C) Robert Owen | (D) Louis Blanc      |

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Socialists had different visions of the future. Some believed in the idea of Cooperatives. Robert Owen (1771-1858), a leading English manufacturer, sought to build a Cooperative Community called New Harmony in Indiana (USA).

**Q9. Consider the following statements regarding Karl Marx:**

1. He argued that Industrial Society was 'Capitalist'.
2. That Capitalists owned the capital invested in factories, and the profit of Capitalists was produced by workers.
3. Workers had to overthrow Capitalism and the rule of Private Properties.

Choose the correct option from the following:

- |            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| (A) Only 1 | (B) Only 2     |
| (C) Only 3 | (D) 1, 2 and 3 |

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Marx argued that industrial society was 'Capitalist'. Capitalists owned the capital invested in factories, and the profit of Capitalists was produced by workers. The conditions of workers could not improve as long as this profit was accumulated by Private Capitalists. Workers had to overthrow Capitalism and the rule of private property. Marx believed that to free themselves from Capitalist exploitation, workers had to construct a radically socialist society where all property was socially controlled. This would be a Communist society. He was convinced that workers would triumph in their conflict with Capitalists.

**10. The Central powers during the First World War included countries like Germany, Turkey and \_\_\_\_\_.**

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| (A) France  | (B) Austria |
| (C) Britain | (D) Russia  |

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** In 1914, War broke out between two European Alliances – Germany Austria and Turkey (the Central powers) and France, Britain and Russia (later Italy and Romania).

11. Which of the following is not a part of April these?
- Land to be transfer to the tiller
  - Bank to be nationalised.
  - Withdrawal from World war I
  - Establishment of political democracy through political reforms.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Lenin returned to Russia from exile and felt that it was time for the Soviets to take over power. He declared that war be brought to a close, land be transferred to the peasants and Banks nationalized. He also argued to rename Bolshevik Party as Communist Party.

12. Who conspired in Italy to bring about a revolution?
- Bismarck
  - Karl Marx
  - Giuseppe Mazzini
  - Musonerie

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** After 1815, Giuseppe Mazzini, an Italian nationalist, conspired with others to achieve revolution in Italy.

13. What were the demands made by the workers in St. Petersburg who went on a strike?
- Reduction of working time to eight hours
  - Increase in wages
  - Improvement in working conditions
  - All the above

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The membership of workers' associations rose dramatically. When four members of the Assembly of Russian Workers, which had been formed in 1904, were dismissed at the Putilov Iron Works, there was a call for industrial action. Over the next few days over 110,000 workers in St Petersburg went on strike demanding a reduction in the working day to eight hours, an increase in wages and improvement in working conditions.

14. Which of the following personality was associated with Bloody Sunday?
- Lenin
  - Father Gapon
  - Rasputin
  - Stalin

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The year 1904 was a particularly bad one for Russian workers. Over 110,000 workers in St Petersburg went on strike demanding a reduction in the working day to eight hours, an increase in wages and improvement in working conditions. When the procession of workers led by Father Gapon reached the Winter Palace it was attacked by the Police and the Cossacks. Over 100 workers were killed and about 300 wounded. The incident was known as Bloody Sunday.

15. By the mid-19<sup>th</sup> century in Europe, the idea which attracted widespread attention on the restructuring of Society was\_\_\_\_\_.

- Capitalism
- Socialism
- Dictatorship
- Communism

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Through the revolution in Russia, Socialism became one of the most significant and powerful ideas to shape society in the twentieth century. Perhaps one of the most far-reaching visions of how society should be structured was Socialism. By the mid-nineteenth century in Europe, Socialism was a well-known body of ideas that attracted widespread attention.

### Assertion and Reason Based MCQs

**Directions :** In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as :

- Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (A) is false, but (R) is true.

1. **Assertion (A) :** Liberals and Radicals themselves were often property owners and employers.

**Reason (R) :** Opposed to the privileges the old Aristocracy had by birth, they firmly believed in the value of individual effort, labour and enterprise.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Industrialization brought men, women, and children to factories. There were many issues like long working hours, unemployment, housing, and sanitation, etc. These problems were common since towns were growing rapidly. Liberals and Radicals searched for solutions to these issues. Almost all industries were the property of individuals. Liberals and Radicals themselves were often property owners and employers. Having made their wealth through trade or industrial ventures, they felt that such effort should be encouraged. Opposed to the privileges the old Aristocracy had by birth, they firmly believed in the value of individual effort, labour and enterprise.

2. **Assertion (A) :** Capitalist were against private property, and saw it as the root of all social ills of the time.

**Reason (R) :** Individuals owned the property that gave employment but the propertied were concerned only with personal gain and not with the welfare of those who made the property productive.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Socialists were against private property and saw it as the root of all social ills of the time.

**3. Assertion (A) :** Marx believed that to free themselves from Capitalist exploitation, workers had to construct a radically Socialist society where all property was socially controlled.

**Reason (R) :** He was convinced that workers would triumph in their conflict with capitalists. A communist society was the natural society of the future.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**4. Assertion (A) :** At the beginning of the twentieth century, the vast majority of Russia's people were industrialist.

**Reason (R) :** Industry was found in pockets. Prominent industrial areas were St Petersburg and Moscow. Craftsmen undertook much of the production, but large factories existed alongside craft workshop.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** At the beginning of the twentieth century, the vast majority of Russia's people were agriculturists. About 85 per cent of the Russian empire's population earned their living from agriculture.

**5. Assertion (A) :** 22 February came to be called the International Women's Day.

**Reason (R) :** On 22 February, a lockout took place at a factory on the right bank. The next day, workers in fifty factories called a strike in sympathy.

In many factories, women led the way to strikes.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**6. Assertion (A) :** Those who resisted Collectivisation were severely punished. Many were deported and exiled.

**Reason (R) :** Stalin's government allowed some independent cultivation, but treated such cultivators sympathetically.

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Those who resisted Collectivisation were severely punished. Many were deported and exiled. As they resisted Collectivisation, peasants argued that they were not rich and they were not against Socialism. They merely did not want to work in collective farms for a variety of reasons. Stalin's government allowed some independent cultivation, but treated such cultivators unsympathetically.



### Case-based MCQs

I. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow :

In April 1917, the Bolshevik leader Vladimir Lenin returned to Russia from his exile. He and the Bolsheviks had opposed the war since 1914.

Now he felt it was time for Soviets to take over power. He declared that the war be brought to a close, land be transferred to the Peasants and Banks be nationalised. These three demands were Lenin's 'April Theses'. He also argued that the Bolshevik Party rename itself the Communist Party to indicate its new radical aims. Most others in the Bolshevik Party were initially surprised by the April Theses. They thought that the time was not yet ripe for a Socialist Revolution and the Provisional Government needed to be supported. But the developments of the subsequent months changed their attitude.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option.

**1. When did Bolshevik leader Vladmir Lenin returned to Russia from his exile?**

- (A) In April, 1918                      (B) In April, 1915  
 (C) In April, 1916                      (D) In April, 1917

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Bolshevik leader Vladimir Lenin returned to Russia from his exile in April 1917.

**2. How many demands were there in Lenin's 'April Theses'?**

- (A) Three                                 (B) Four  
 (C) Five                                    (D) Six

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Lenin and the Bolsheviks had opposed the world war since 1914. He felt it was time for the Soviets to take over power. He declared that the war is brought to a close land be transferred to the Peasants, and Banks are nationalized.

These three demands were Lenin's 'April Theses'.

**3. Lenin argued that the Bolshevik Party should rename itself as \_\_\_\_\_.**

- (A) Communist Party  
 (B) Socialist Party  
 (C) Russian Social Democratic Labour Party  
 (D) Socialist Revolutionary Party

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Lenin argued that the Bolshevik Party should rename itself the Communist Party to indicate its new radical aims.

**4. Petrograd had led the February Revolution that brought down the \_\_\_\_\_.**

- (A) Slavery in the February 1917  
 (B) Monarchy in February 1917  
 (C) Clergy in February  
 (D) Nobility in February 1917

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Russia was an Autocracy. Socialists took over the government in Russia through the October Revolution of 1917. The fall of Monarchy in February 1917 and the events of October are normally called the Russian Revolution.

**II.** One of the groups which looked to change society were the Liberals. Liberals wanted a nation which tolerated all religions. We should remember that at this time European states usually discriminated in favour of one religion or another (Britain favoured the Church of England, Austria and Spain favoured the Catholic Church). Liberals also opposed the uncontrolled power of dynastic rulers. They wanted to safeguard the rights of individuals against governments. They argued for a representative elected parliamentary government, subject to laws interpreted by a well-trained judiciary that was independent of rulers and officials. However, they were not 'democrats'. They did not believe in Universal Adult Franchise, that is, the right of every citizen to vote. They felt men of property mainly should have the vote. They also did not want the vote for women.

**1. \_\_\_\_ become one of the most significant and powerful ideas to shape society in the twentieth century, through the Revolution in Russia.**

- (A) Communism      (B) Socialism  
 (C) Dictatorship      (D) Democracy

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Socialism became one of the most significant and powerful ideas to shape society in the twentieth century through the Revolution in Russia.

**2. Liberals wanted a nation which tolerated.**

- (A) No religion      (B) One religion  
 (C) Few religions      (D) All religions

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Liberals wanted a nation which tolerated all religions. At that time European states usually discriminated in favour of one religion or another. Britain favoured the Church of England, Austria and Spain favoured the Catholic Church.

**3. Which countries favoured the Catholic Church?**

- (A) France and Spain      (B) Spain and Italy  
 (C) Austria and Spain      (D) Spain and Germany

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Austria and Spain favoured the Catholic Church.

**4. What was the suffragette?**

- (A) Women's movement  
 (B) Property tax  
 (C) Land acquisition  
 (D) Proletariat class

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Suffragette movement is a movement which gave women the right to vote.

**III.** The year 1904 was a particularly bad one for Russian workers. Prices of essential goods rose so quickly that real wages declined by 20 percent. The membership of Workers' Associations rose dramatically. When four members of the Assembly of Russian Workers, which had been formed in 1904, were dismissed at the Putilov Iron Works, there was a call for industrial action. Over the next few days over 110,000 workers in St. Petersburg went on strike demanding a reduction in the working day to eight hours, an increase in wages and improvement in working conditions.

When the procession of Workers led by Father Gapon reached the Winter Palace it was attacked by the Police and the Cossacks. Over 100 Workers were killed and about 300 wounded. The incident, known as Bloody Sunday, started a series of events that became known as the 1905 Revolution. Strikes took place all over the Country and Universities closed down when Student bodies staged walkouts, complaining about the lack of civil liberties. Lawyers, Doctors, Engineers and other Middle-class Workers established the Union of Unions and demanded a Constituent Assembly.

**1. In the year 1904, real wages of Russian Workers declined by \_\_\_\_.**

- (A) 25 percent      (B) 20 percent  
 (C) 40 percent      (D) 30 percent

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The year 1904 was a particularly bad one for Russian workers. Prices of essential goods rose so quickly that real wages declined by 20 percent.

**2. At St. Petersburg Workers in strike were demanding a reduction in the working hours to \_\_\_\_.**

- (A) Eight hours      (B) Six hours  
 (C) Ten hours      (D) Seven hours

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** When four members of the Assembly of Russian Workers, which had been formed in 1904, were dismissed at the Putilov Iron Works, there was a call for industrial action. Over the next few days over 110,000 workers in St. Petersburg went on strike demanding a reduction in the working day to eight hours, an increase in wages and improvement in working conditions.

**3. Over \_\_\_\_ workers were killed and about \_\_\_\_ wounded.**

- (A) 100, 200      (B) 200, 300  
 (C) 100, 300      (D) 200, 400

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** When the procession of workers led by Father Gapon reached the Winter Palace, it was attacked by the Police and the Cossacks. Over 100 workers were killed and about 300 wounded.

4. The incident, known as \_\_\_\_\_ started a series of events that came to be known as the 1905 Revolution.  
 (A) Bloody Monday      (B) Bloody Friday  
 (C) Bloody Saturday      (D) Bloody Sunday

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The procession of workers led by Father Gapon reached the Winter Palace it was attacked by the Police and the Cossacks. Over 100 workers were killed and about 300 wounded. The incident, known as Bloody Sunday, started a series of events that came to be known as the 1905 Revolution.

## ✓ (B) SUBJECTIVE QUESTIONS



### Short Answer Type Questions

(3 Marks Each)

- Q. 1.What was the vision of Robert Owen and Louis Blanc related to Co-operatives? Explain.

[O.E.B.] [U]  
[Board Term-I, 2016]

**Ans. Views of Robert Owen :**

- (i) He sought to build a Cooperative Community called New Harmony in Indiana (USA).

**Views of Louis Blanc :**

- (ii) In France, Blanc wanted the government to encourage Co-operatives and replace Capitalist enterprises.  
 (iii) These Co-operatives were two associations of people who produced goods together and divided the profits according to the work done by members. (1 × 3 = 3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

- Q. 2. Describe the Ideas of Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels about the Capitalists.

[Board Term-I, 2016]

**Ans. (i)** Marx argued that Industrialist Society was 'Capitalist'.

- (ii) The condition of Workers could not improve as long as the profit was accumulated by Private Capitalists.  
 (iii) Marx believed that to free themselves from Capitalist exploitation, the Workers had to construct a Radical Society.  
 (iv) He believed that the Communist Society was the Natural Society of the future. (Any three)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1×3=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Liberals and Capitalists are considered to be same.

#### Answering Tip

- Liberals advocates the freedom of the individual; whereas Capitalist believes in Private Ownership of the means of production and their operation for profit.

- Q. 3. Describe the views of Radicals.

[Board DDE Term-I, 2014]

**Ans. The views of Radicals were as follows :**

- (i) The Radicals wanted to bring about immediate social change in Russia.  
 (ii) They wanted to form a government based on the majority of country's population.  
 (iii) They were against Private Properties.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2014] (1 × 3 = 3)

- Q. 4. What type of economy existed in Russia before the Revolution ?

[Board Term I, 2016]

**Ans. Before the Russian Revolution :**

- (i) Vast population was Agriculturalists.  
 (ii) Cultivators produced for the market as well as for their own needs.  
 (iii) Industry in the form of Private Properties was found in pockets - factories were set up in 1890s and 1900s. (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

**Detailed Answer:**

- (i) At the beginning of the twentieth century, the vast majority of Russia's people were Agriculturalists. About 85 per cent of the Russian Empires population earned their living from agriculture.  
 (ii) In France and Germany the proportion was between 40 per cent and 50 per cent. In the Empire, cultivators produced for the market as well as for their own needs and Russia was a major exporter of grain.  
 (iii) Industry was found in pockets. Prominent Industrial areas were St. Petersburg and Moscow. Craftsmen undertook much of the production, but large factories existed alongside Craft Workshops.

- Q. 5. Describe the political conditions in Russia before the Revolution.

[Board Term I, 2016]

- Ans. (i)** Autocratic rule of the Tsar was not subject to Parliament.

- (ii) Political parties were considered illegal.  
 (iii) A vast empire consisted of various nationalities, but the Tsar was insensitive to their demands.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1 × 3 = 3)

**[A]** Q. 6. Describe any three changes that took place in the year of 1904 in Russia. [U]  
[Board Term I, 2015]

**Ans.** Three changes that took place in Russia in 1904 were :

- Prices of essential goods raised so quickly that real wages declined by 20%.
- The membership of Workers' Association rose dramatically.
- Four members of the Assembly of Russian Workers were dismissed at the Putilov Iron Works.
- Over 110,000 workers in St. Petersburg went on strike demanding a reduction in the working day to eight hours, an increase in wages and improvement in working conditions. (Any three)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] (1 × 3 = 3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- The students mention only about the political aspect.

#### Answering Tip

- Mention about the economic crisis and its impact on the workers.

Q. 7. Mention the three major demands raised by Russian workers who went on strike at St. Petersburg in 1904. [Board Term I, 2015]

**Ans.** The demands raised by Russian workers :

- Reduction in the working day to eight hours.
- Increase in wages.
- Improvement in working conditions.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] (1×3=3)

Q. 8. In what ways were working population of Russia different from other countries in Europe before 1917 ? [A] [Board NCT Term I, 2014] [NCERT]

- Ans.** (i) The working population in European countries were a lot more united than those in Russia. The condition of Russian people, especially those of the working population like the Farmers and the Factory Workers, was deplorable as compared to other European countries.
- (ii) It was mainly due to the Autocratic government of Tsar Nicholas-II, who antagonized these people day-by-day by his corrupt and oppressive policies.
- (iii) The Peasants worked as Serfs on the land and much of their produce went into the hands of Landowners and the privileged classes. The Nobility, the Crown and the Orthodox Church owned large properties.
- (iv) Although, these Peasants were generally deeply religious yet they had no respect for the Nobility. In European countries, the Peasants respected Nobles and fought for them. But in Russia, Peasants wanted the land of the Nobles to be given to them.

(Any three) (1 × 3 = 3)

**[A]** Q. 9. Explain the Lenin's 'April Theses'. [R]  
[Board Term I, 2016]

OR

What were the main demands of April Theses? [Board Term I, 2014]

OR

Describe the three major demands of Bolsheviks during 1917. [Board Term I, 2012]

OR

Explain Lenin's 'April Theses'. What were its effects on the Party Members?

**Ans.** Demands of 'April Theses':

- Lenin returned to Russia from exile and felt that it was time for the Soviets to take over power. He declared that war be brought to a close, land be transferred to the Peasants and Banks nationalized. He also argued to rename Bolshevik Party as Communist Party.
- Started planning on uprising against government with the support of Army.
- Military Revolutionary Committee was planned to seize the power and bring the city under control.
- Initially, the Members were surprised and thought that the time was not right for Socialist Revolution, but the developments in the subsequent months changed their attitude.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012] (1×3=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- The students tend to answer the demands of the April Theses without knowing the meaning of the same.

#### Answering Tip

- April Theses were a series of ten directives issued by Lenin.

Q. 10. Describe the conditions of the working women during the years from 1900 to 1930 in Russia. [U]  
[Board Term I, 2015] [NCERT]

**Ans.** Conditions of the working women in Russia :

- Took active part in the Revolution and often inspired their Male Co-workers.
- Women made up 31 per cent of Factory Labour.
- They were less than their male counterparts.
- During February Revolution, the women workers led the way to strikes.
- 22<sup>nd</sup> February was called International Women's Day. (Any three) (1 × 3 = 3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015]

Q. 11. How did the Tsarist Autocracy collapse in 1917? Explain. [Board Term I, 2015]

OR

State the reasons for the collapse of Tsarist autocracy in 1917. [A] [Board Term I, 2014]

OR

**Why did Tsarist Autocracy collapse in 1917?**  
**[Board Term I, 2013] [NCERT]**

**Ans.** Causes of Tsarist Autocracy collapse were :

- (i) The Industrial Workers in Russia got very low wages and had very long working hours, sometimes upto 15 hours.
- (ii) The Workers demanded higher wages and reduction in working hours, but their demands were not met and they became dissatisfied.
- (iii) Most of the Peasants were landless and very poor. Due to the Autocratic government of Tsar Nicholas II, the condition of the Russian People, Farmers and Factory Workers was highly miserable. As a result, his Autocracy collapsed in 1917.
- (iv) The Peasants worked as Serfs on the land. Most of the produce went to the Privileged classes and the Landowners. As a result, farmers suffered from hunger. Later, due to these oppressive policies and out of frustration, the farmers refused to pay rent to the Landlords.
- (v) The Workers could not form any Trade Unions and Political Parties to express their grievances. The Workers did not get even the minimum fixed wages. They used to work for 12–15 hours a day, due to no limit on working hours.
- (vi) Karl Marx taught the people to raise a standard revolt.
- (vii) The Revolution of 1905 also proved to be a Dress Rehearsal of the Revolution of 1917.
- (viii) Tsar's participation and defeat in the First World War served the last reason of failure of his Autocracy in 1917.

**(Any three) (1 × 3 = 3)**

#### Commonly Made Error

- The students explain majorly about the poor conditions of Peasants under Tsarist rule.

#### Answering Tip

- Condition of Industrial workers, influence of philosophical ideas also needs to be explained.

**Q. 12. Describe the incident known as the 'Bloody Sunday'. State any two events after the Bloody Sunday which led to the Revolution of 1905 in Russia.** **U [Board Term I, 2014]**

**Ans.** The incident of attack by Police over protesting Workers demanding improvement in Working condition in Russia which left many workers killed and wounded, is known as the 'Bloody Sunday'. Events after that which led to the Revolution of 1905 in Russia :

- (i) Strike took place all over the Country, Universities closed down.
- (ii) Lawyers, Doctors, Engineers and other Middle class Workers established the Union of Unions and demanded a Constituent Assembly.(1 + 2 = 3)

**[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2014]**

**Q. 13. What were the three main causes of the Civil War between Bolsheviks and the Russian army, the**

**Non- Bolshevik Socialists?** **U [Board Term-I, 2016]**

OR

**Explain any three reasons which led to the Civil War between the Bolsheviks and the Russian Army of Non- Bolsheviks.** **[Board Term-I, 2012]**

- (i) When Bolshevik ordered land distribution, the Russian Army began to break up.
- (ii) Non- Bolshevik Socialists, Liberals and supporters of Autocracy condemned this.
- (iii) Their leaders moved to South Russia and organised trips to fight the Bolsheviks.
- (iv) These troops and Bolsheviks fought a Civil War and looting and famine became common.

**(Any three) (1 × 3 = 3)**

**[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]**

**Detailed Answer :**

#### Reasons for the Civil War :

- (i) Redistribution of land by Bolsheviks.
- (ii) Soldiers wanted to go back to their homes.
- (iii) Non-Bolsheviks were against the Bolsheviks' popularity.
- (iv) They were backed by French, American and British to end Socialism.
- (v) Supporters of Private Property took harsh steps against Peasants who had seized land. So, Non-Bolsheviks lost popular support. **(Any three points)**

**(1×3=3)**

**Q. 14. Explain measures taken by Stalin to solve the problem of acute shortages of grains?** **R [Board Term-I, 2016]**

- (i) Stalin confiscated supplies, to prevent Rich Peasants and Landlords from indulging in Black-marketing.
- (ii) 'Kulaks' were raided.
- (iii) Collective farms system known as 'Kolkhoz' was introduced.
- (iv) Party members supervised and enforced grain collection. **(Any three) (1 × 3 = 3)**

**[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]**

**Q. 15. Identify the conditions of workers in Socialist Society of Russia.** **A [Board Term-I, 2016]**

- (i) Rapid construction led to poor working conditions. Workers lived hard lives and the result was 550 stoppages of work in the first year alone.
- (ii) An extended schooling system developed and arrangements were made for Factory Workers and Peasants to enter Universities.
- (iii) Creches were established in factories for the Children of Women Workers.
- (iv) Cheap Public Healthcare was provided. Model living quarters were set up for Workers.

**(Any three)**

**(1×3=3)**

**Q. 16. What agricultural changes were introduced in Soviet Union after 1917? Explain.** **R [Board Term-I, 2014]**

**Ans. Changes :**

- (i) Large Estates of Church, Landlords, Nobility, etc., were taken away by the Government and distributed to Peasants.
- (ii) These Peasants had very small holdings of land, which were not productive. So, a new method of agriculture was introduced that was called the Collective farm.
- (iii) Rich Farmers opposed this type of farming. They were dealt with harshly by the government. Thus, landlords were oppressed.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2014] (1 × 3 = 3)

**Q. 17. Who were Soviets? What was their role in the Revolution?** [A] [Board Term I, 2013]

**Ans.** Soviet was a Council of Striking Workers and Soldiers who formed February Revolution.

- (i) The Petrograd Soviet led the Revolution.
- (ii) It helped the Bolsheviks to seize power.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013] (1+2=3)

**Detailed Answer :**

Soviet was the collective name used for several organizations in Russia. It consisted of a council of workers and soldiers. They came up in 1905 after a Textile strike. The main Head of Soviet was the Bolshevik. The Prominent Soviet Leaders got arrested and imprisoned. They came back in 1917 and challenged the powers of Nicholas II.

The Petrograd Soviet led the Revolution. The Petrograd Soviet also led the February Revolution to bring down the monarchy in February 1917.

The Second Revolution which is known as the Bolshevik Revolution broke out on October 25, 1917.

The four-fold programme of this Party was :

- (i) Land to Tiller.
- (ii) Food to the hungry.
- (iii) Power to the Soviets.
- (iv) Withdrawal from the First World War.

**Long Answer Type Questions**

(5 Marks Each)

**Q. 1. What is Socialism? Mention its four features ?** [R] [Board Term-I, 2016]

**Ans.** Socialism is a body of ideas to restructure society on equal status.

**Its four features are :**

- (i) It is against Ownership of private property.
- (ii) Society as a whole should control the property, collectively.
- (iii) It stands for collective social interests rather than personal gains.
- (iv) Socialism was in favour of Cooperatives and that wages should be given according to work done.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1 + 4 = 5)

**Commonly Made Error**

- Some students mention the causes of Socialism instead of its features.

**Answering Tip**

- The students should read the question carefully and understand that the meaning of features/ characteristics is totally different from that of the causes.

**Q. 2. Explain the thoughts and beliefs of Karl Marx which convinced the Workers to enter into conflict with the Capitalists.** [U] [Board Term-I, 2015]

**Ans. The thoughts and beliefs of Karl Marx :**

- (i) Industrial Society was Capitalist. Profit of Capitalists was produced by Workers.
- (ii) Conditions of Workers could not improve till capitalists accumulated wealth.
- (iii) Workers should overthrow Capitalism and Private property.
- (iv) Workers should construct a radically Socialist Society where all property would be socially controlled. This would be a Communist state.
- (v) Karl Marx believed that all of this would help the Workers win over the Capitalists.

[CBSE marking Scheme, 2015]

(1 × 5 = 5)

**Commonly Made Error**

- The concept of 'Industrial Society' is not clear to most of the Students.

**Answering Tip**

- An Industrial society is a society driven by the use of technology to enable mass production , supporting a large population.

**Q. 3. What were the main objectives of Liberals in Russia?** [U] [Board Term-I, 2013]

**Ans.** The main objectives of Liberals were as follows :

- (i) They wanted a nation which tolerated all the religions.
- (ii) They opposed the uncontrolled power of Dynastic Rulers.
- (iii) They wanted to safeguard the rights to individual against the government.
- (iv) They did not believe in Universal Adult Franchise as they were not democrats.
- (v) Liberals argued for a representative elected by the government. They were subjected to laws interpreted by a well-trained Judiciary that was independent of rulers and officials.
- (vi) In the parts of Europe, where independent nation states did not yet exist, for example, Germany, Italy, Poland—men and women combined their demands for constitutionalism with national unification.

(Any five) (1 × 5 = 5)

**Commonly Made Error**

- The students get confused between the ideas of Liberals, Radicals and Conservatives.

**Answering Tip**

- Students should focus majorly on the ideas of Liberals and the reasons behind that.

**Q. 4. Explain any five socio-economic conditions of Russia at the beginning of the twentieth century.**

U [Board Term I, 2016]

**Ans. Socio- economic conditions of Russia :**

- Social inequality was very prominent among the working class.
- Economically, Russia was going through a very difficult period.
- The population had doubled and the economic conditions turned from bad to worse.
- Most people were Agriculturists.
- Industries were found in pockets and Craftsmen undertook much of the production.
- Most Industries were the private properties of Industrialists.
- Workers were divided on the basis of their occupation and skills.
- Women made up 31 per cent of the factory labour, but they were paid less than men.
- Like workers, peasants too were divided.

(Any five points)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1×5=5)

**Commonly Made Error**

- The students explain about the occupation practised by Russian population.

**Answering Tip**

- The Students are required to mention about the overall conditions of Russia in the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

**Q. 5. Highlight the social and political conditions that led to the Russian Revolution.** R

[Board Term I, 2016]

- Ans.**
- Autocratic Rule of Tsars.
  - Conditions of peasants, who earned their living through Agriculture.
  - Status of Industry—Factory Workers and Craftsmen were almost in equal numbers.
  - Condition of workers—their working hours were sometimes up to 15 hours.
  - Status of nobles—got their power by serving Tsar. Peasants wanted land of Nobles.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1 × 5 = 5)

**Commonly Made Error**

- The students answer only one part of the question.

**Answering Tip**

- Mention the poor conditions of the general public which led to the outbreak of Russian Revolution.

**Q. 6. What changes were seen in Russia after October Revolution of 1917?** A

[Board Term I, 2014]

OR

What are the main changes brought about by the Bolsheviks immediately after the October Revolution? [Term I, KVS 2019, NCT-2014]

OR

Relate the changes which followed the October Revolution in Russia. [DDE Term I, 2014]

[Board 2013]

OR

Describe any five changes brought about by the Bolsheviks immediately after the October Revolution. [Board Term I, 2012]

**Ans. Changes were :**

- Most of the Industries and Banks were nationalised in November 1917.
- Land was declared Social property.
- In cities, Bolsheviks enforced the partition of large houses according to family requirements.
- Banned the use of the old titles of Aristocracy.
- New Uniforms were designed for the Army and Officials.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2014] (1×5=5)

**Detailed Answer :**

Changes brought about by the Bolsheviks after the October Revolution :

- The Bolshevik government nationalized the Industries.
- Land was declared social property and peasants were allowed to seize the land of the Nobility.
- Enforced the partition of large houses in accordance to the requirements of the family.
- Old titles of aristocracy were abolished.
- The entire army was reorganized.
- Though the Bolsheviks failed to win the majority in the elections in 1918, they remained in power.
- All other parties were banned.
- Secret Police service was started to crush the opponents.
- New Uniforms were designed for the Army and Officials.

(Any five) (1×5=5)

**Q. 7. Describe February Revolution of 1917 and October Revolution of 1917 in brief.** U

[Board Term I, 2015] [NCERT]

**Ans. February Revolution :**

- Factory locked out on the right bank on 22<sup>nd</sup> February.
- Sympathy strike was done by Workers in 50 Factories on 23<sup>rd</sup> February.
- On 25<sup>th</sup> February, Government suspended the Duma and demonstrators came on roads.
- Police Headquarters were ransacked by Workers. Regiment supported the workers and they formed the Petrograd Soviet.
- On 2<sup>nd</sup> March, the Tsar abdicated and Soviet and Duma leaders formed the Provisional Government.

**October Revolution :**

- On 16<sup>th</sup> October, Vladimir Lenin, the Bolshevik leader persuaded the Petrograd Soviet.
- A Military Revolutionary Committee was appointed by the Soviet.
- The Military Committee seized the government offices and arrested Ministers.
- The Winter Palace was shelled.
- Ministers of the Provisional Government surrendered.
- The Bolsheviks gained control.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015]  
(2½×2=5)

**Q. 8. Mention the main events of the February Revolution of 1917.** [Board Term I, 2014]

**OR**

State any five events that led to the February Revolution in Petrograd. [Board Term I, 2012]

**Ans. Main events of the February Revolution were :**

- In February 1917, there was a severe food shortage in the Workers' Quarters.
- All the Factories and Workers' Quarters were located on the right bank of the River Neva. On the left bank, there were the Winter Palace, Official buildings and the Palace where Duma met.
- On 22<sup>nd</sup> February, a lockout took place at a factory leading to a strike by the Workers. The next day, Workers in fifty factories called a strike in sympathy.
- The demonstrating workers ultimately crossed the river and surrounded the Official buildings in Petrograd.
- The Government imposed a curfew and called out the cavalry and police to keep check on them.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2014] (1 × 5 = 5)

**Commonly Made Error**

- The Students mentioned incorrect date/ year.

**Answering Tip**

- Events should be mentioned in a chronological order.

**Q. 9. Examine three reasons for the success of Socialist economy in post-Revolution of Russia.** [DDE-2014, Board Term I, 2013]

**Ans. Three reasons were :**

- The Estates of the Rich like the Landlords, the Tsar and the Church were confiscated and handed over to the Peasants to be cultivated without hired labour. This act proved very successful and popular.
- The system of Capitalism or the rich exploiting the poor was done away with everybody and everybody was forced to work and earn his own living.

- The Right to Work became a constitutional right and it became the duty of the state to provide employment to every individual.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013] 5

**Q. 10. Explain any five features of Stalin's Collectivization Programme for peasants in Russia.** [Board Term I, 2015]

**OR**

Explain Stalin's Collectivization Programme. [Board Term I, 2013]

**OR**

Describe any five points of Stalin's Collectivization Programme. [Board Term I, 2012]

**OR**

Write a few lines on Stalin's Collectivization Programme. [NCERT]

**Ans.** (i) Party forced all Peasants to cultivate in collective farms.

(ii) The bulk of land and implements were transferred to the Ownership of collective farms.

(iii) Peasants worked on the land and the Kolkhoz profit was shared.

(iv) Enraged Peasants resisted the authorities and destroyed their livestock.

(v) Those who resisted Collectivization were severely punished.

(vi) Stalin's Government allowed some independent cultivation but treated such Cultivators unsympathetically. (Any five)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] (1×5=5)

**Commonly Made Error**

- Collectivization Policy is seen as a Short Term Policy.

**Answering Tip**

- Collectivization policy was part of the first Five Year Plan marked by Stalin.

**Q. 11. By the end of the twentieth century the international reputation of the USSR as a Socialist country had declined. Explain the statement.**

[Board Term I, 2015]

**Ans. The above statement is true because :**

- The style of government in the USSR was not keeping in with the ideals of the Russian Revolution.
- All was not well in the Soviet Union; Dictatorial Rule of Communist Party began.
- There was no Democracy, only one Party Rule of Communist Party prevailed.
- Repressive policies like Collectivisation became unpopular.
- Life of the individual was controlled by the state. This made the people unhappy.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] (1 × 5 = 5)



**CHAPTER****2****NAZISM AND THE RISE OF HITLER****Syllabus**

- *Birth of the Weimar Republic*
- *Hitler's Rise to Power*
- *The Nazi Worldview*
- *Youth in Nazi Germany*
- *Ordinary People and the Crimes against Humanity*

**Learning Outcomes**

- *Discuss the critical significance of Nazism in shaping the politics of modern world.*
- *Get familiarized with the speeches and writings of Nazi Leaders.*

**Revision Notes****Birth of the Weimar Republic**

- Germany, a powerful empire in the early years of the twentieth century, fought the First World War (1914-1918) alongside the Austrian empire and against the Allies (England, France and Russia.)
- The defeat of Imperial Germany and the abdication of the Emperor gave an opportunity to Parliamentary parties to recast German polity.
- A National Assembly met at Weimar and established a democratic constitution with a federal structure.
- Deputies were now elected to the German Parliament or Reichstag, on the basis of equal and universal votes cast by all adults including women.
- The War Guilt Clause held Germany responsible for the war and damages the Allied countries suffered. The Allied armies occupied Rhineland in the 1920s.
- Many Germans held the new Weimar Republic responsible for not only the defeat in the war but the disgrace at Versailles.

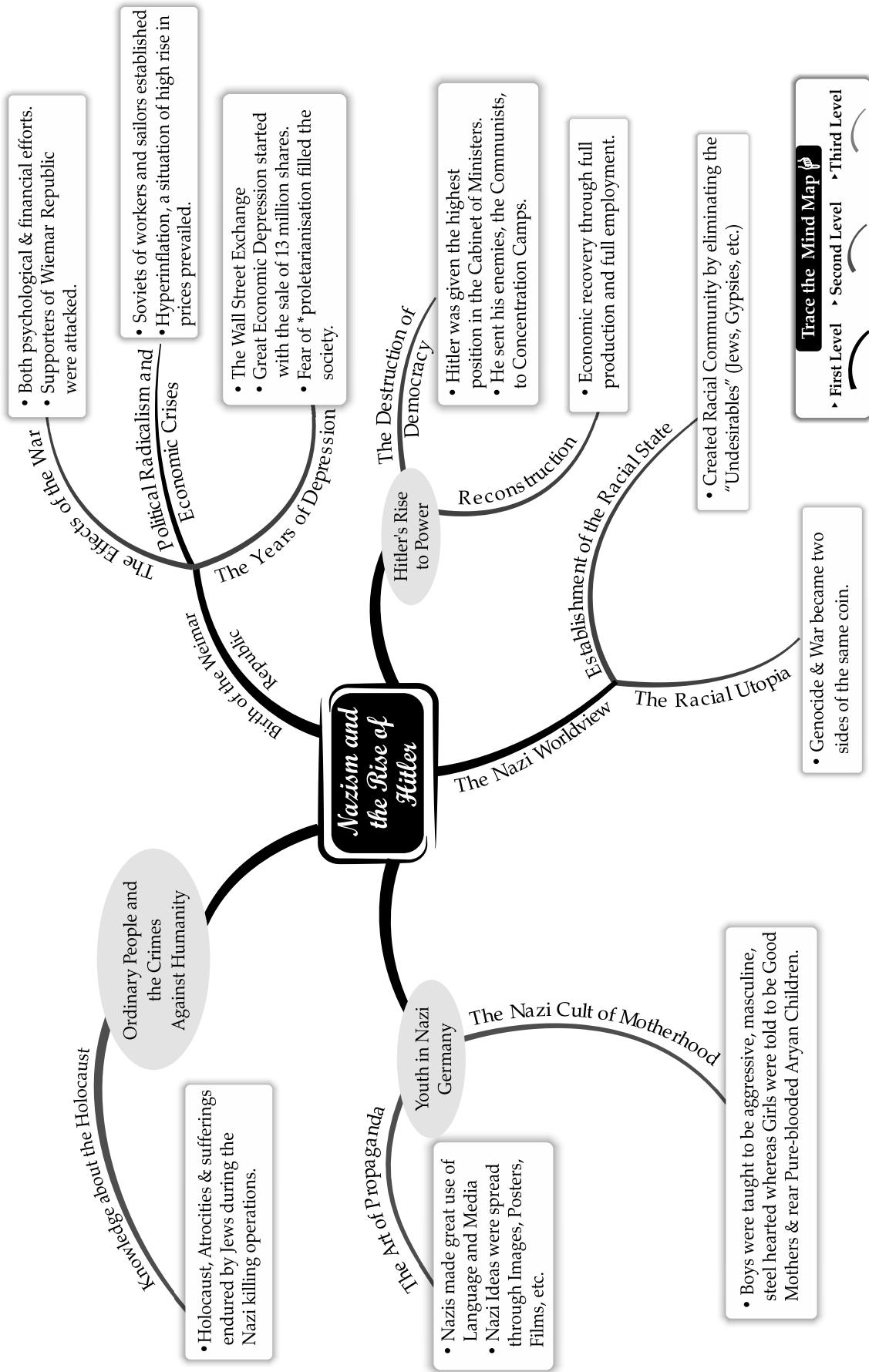
Scan to know more about this topic



German Economic crises  
1923

**The Effects of the War**

- The war had a devastating impact on the entire continent both psychologically and financially.
- From a continent of creditors, Europe turned into one of the debtors.
- Supporters of the Weimar Republic, mainly Socialists, Catholics and Democrats, became easy targets of attack in the conservative nationalist circles. They were mockingly called the 'November Criminals'.
- The First World War left a deep imprint on European Society and polity.
- Soldiers came to be placed above Civilians. Politicians and Publicists laid great stress on the need for men to be aggressive, strong and masculine.



### **Political Radicalism and Economic Crisis**

- The birth of the Weimar Republic coincided with the revolutionary uprising of the Spartacist League on the pattern of the Bolshevik Revolution in Russia.
- Those opposed to this – such as the Socialists, Democrats and Catholics – met in Weimar to give shape to the Democratic Republic.
- The Weimar Republic crushed the uprising with the help of a war veterans organisation called 'Free Corps'.
- Both revolutionaries and militant nationalists craved for radical solutions. Political radicalisation heightened by the Economic Crisis of 1923.
- The image of Germans carrying cart loads of currency notes to buy a loaf of bread was widely publicised evoking worldwide sympathy. This Crisis came to be known as Hyperinflation, a situation when prices arise phenomenally high.

### **The Years of Depression**

- The years between 1924 and 1928 saw some stability. German investments and industrial recovery were totally dependent on short-term loans, largely from the USA. This support was withdrawn when the Wall Street Exchange crashed in 1929.
- On one single day, 24<sup>th</sup> October, 13 million shares were sold. This was the start of the 'Great Economic Depression'.
- Over the next three years, between 1929 and 1932, the National Income of the USA fell by half. Factories shut down, Exports fell, Farmers were badly hit and speculators withdrew their money from the Market. The effects of this recession in the US economy were felt Worldwide.
- The German economy was worst hit by the Economic Crisis. Workers lost their jobs or were paid reduced wages. The number of unemployed touched an unprecedented 6 million.
- As jobs disappeared, the Youth took to criminal activities and total despair became common place.
- Politically too, the Weimar Republic was fragile. The Weimar Constitution had some inherent defects, which made it unstable and vulnerable to Dictatorship.
- Another defect was Article 48, which gave the President the powers to impose Emergency, Suspend Civil Rights and Rule by Decree.
- Yet, the crisis could not be managed. People lost confidence in the Democratic Parliamentary System, which seemed to offer no solutions.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topic



Weimar  
Republic

## **Hitler's Rise to Power**

- This crisis in the economy, polity and society formed the background to Hitler's rise to power. Born in 1889 in Austria, Hitler spent his youth in poverty.
- In 1919, he joined a small group called the German Worker's Party. He subsequently took over the Organisation and renamed it the National Socialist German Worker's Party. This Party later came to be known as the 'Nazi Party'.
- The Nazis could not effectively mobilise popular support till the early 1930s. It was during the Great Depression that Nazism became a Mass Movement.
- By 1932, the Nazi Party had become the largest party with 37 per cent votes.
- Hitler effectively mobilised popular support in Germany :
  - (i) Hitler was a powerful speaker. His passion and his words moved people.
  - (ii) He promised to build a strong nation.
  - (iii) He also promised to undo the injustice of the Versailles Treaty and restore the dignity of German People.
  - (iv) He promised employment for those looking for work and a secure future for the Youth.
  - (v) He promised to weed out all Foreign influences and resist all Foreign conspiracies against Germany.
  - (vi) He understood the significance of rituals and spectacle in mass mobilisation. Nazis held Massive Rallies and Public Meetings to demonstrate the support for Hitler and instil a Sense of Unity among the people.
  - (vii) The Red Banners with the Swastika, the Nazi salute, and the ritualised rounds of applause after the speeches were all part of this spectacle of power.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topic



Hitler's Rise to  
Power

### **The Destruction of Democracy**

- On 30<sup>th</sup> January, 1933, President Hindenburg offered the Chancellorship, the highest position in the Cabinet of Ministers, to Hitler.
- The Fire Decree of 28<sup>th</sup> February, 1933 indefinitely suspended civic rights like Freedom of Speech, Press and Assembly that had been guaranteed by the Weimar Constitution.

- On 3<sup>rd</sup> March, 1933, the famous 'Enabling Act' was passed. This Act established dictatorship in Germany. It gave Hitler all powers to sideline Parliament and rule by Decree.
- Special Surveillance and Security Forces were created to control and order society in ways that the Nazis wanted.
- Apart from the already existing regular police in green uniform and the SA or the 'Storm Troopers', these included the Gestapo (Secret State Police), the SS (The Protection Squads), Criminal Police and the Security Service (SD).

### **Reconstruction**

- In Foreign Policy also, Hitler acquired quick successes. He pulled out of the League of Nations in 1933, reoccupied the Rhineland in 1936, and integrated Austria and Germany in 1938 under the slogan, '*One People, One Empire and One Leader*'.
- In September 1940, a 'Tripartite Pact' was signed between Germany, Italy and Japan, strengthening Hitler's claim to International Power.
- By the end of 1940, Hitler was at the pinnacle of his power. He attacked the Soviet Union in June 1941.
- Meanwhile, the USA had resisted involvement in the war. It was unwilling to once again face all the economic problems that the First World War had caused.
- When Japan extended its support to Hitler and bombed the US base at Pearl Harbor, the US entered the Second World War.
- The War ended in May 1945 with Hitler's defeat and the US dropping of the Atom Bomb on Hiroshima in Japan.

## **The Nazi Worldview**

- Nazi ideology was synonymous with Hitler's world view. According to this, there was no equality between people, but only a racial hierarchy.
- In this view blond, blue-eyed, Nordic German Aryans were at the top, while Jews were located at the lowest rung. They came to be regarded as an anti-race, the arch-enemies of the Aryans.
- All other coloured people were placed in between, depending upon their external features.
- The other aspect of Hitler's Ideology related to the geopolitical concept of *Lebensraum*, or living space. He believed that new territories had to be acquired for settlement. This would enhance the area of the Mother Country, while enabling the settlers on new lands to retain an intimate link with the place of their origin.

Scan to know more about this topic



The main Principles of Nazi Ideology

### **Establishment of the Racial State**

- Nazis wanted only a society of 'pure and healthy Nordic Aryans'. They alone were considered 'desirable'. Only they were seen as worthy of prospering and multiplying against all others who were classed as 'Undesirable'.
- Jews were not the only Community classified as 'undesirable', many Gypsies and Blacks living in Nazi Germany were considered as racial 'inferiors' who threatened the biological purity of the Superior Aryan Race.
- Even Russians and Poles were considered Subhuman, and hence undeserving of any humanity.
- Jews remained the worst sufferers in Nazi Germany. They had been stereotyped as killers of Christ and Usurers. They lived in separately marked areas called 'Ghettos'.
- From 1933 to 1938, the Nazis terrorised, pauperised and segregated the Jews, compelling them to leave the country.
- The next phase, 1939-1945, aimed at concentrating them in certain areas and eventually killing them in gas chambers in Poland.

### **The Racial Utopia**

- Genocide and War became two sides of the same coin. Poland was divided and much of North-Western Poland was annexed to Germany.
- People of Poland were forced to leave their homes and properties.
- Members of the Polish intelligentsia were murdered in large numbers. Polish children who looked like Aryans were forcibly snatched from their mothers and examined by 'race experts'.

## **Youth, Ordinary People and the Crime Against Humanity**

- Hitler was fanatically interested in the youth of the country. He felt that a strong Nazi society could be established only by teaching children Nazi Ideology. This required a control over the child both inside and outside school.

➤ Effects of Nazism on the School System :

- (i) All schools were 'cleansed' and 'purified'. This meant that teachers who were Jews or seen as politically unreliable were dismissed.
  - (ii) Children were first segregated – Germans and Jews could not sit together or play together.
  - (iii) Subsequently, undesirable children – Jews, the physically handicapped, Gypsies were thrown out of schools.
  - (iv) 'Good German' children were subjected to a process of Nazi schooling, a prolonged period of ideological training.
  - (v) School textbooks were rewritten. Racial science was introduced to justify Nazi ideas of race.
  - (vi) Children were taught to be loyal and submissive, hate Jews and worship Hitler.
  - (vii) Even the function of sports was to nurture a spirit of violence and aggression among children. Hitler believed that Boxing could make children iron-hearted, strong and masculine.
- Youth Organisations were made responsible for educating German youth in the 'The Spirit of National Socialism'. Ten year old had to enter Jungvolk.
- At 14, all Boys had to join the Nazi Youth Organisation – Hitler Youth – where they learnt to worship war, glorify aggression and violence, condemn democracy, and hate Jews, Communists, Gypsies and all those categorised as 'Undesirable'.
- At the age of 18, the Youth had to serve in the Armed Forces and enter one of the Nazi organisations. The Youth League of the Nazis was founded in 1922.

Scan to know more about this topic



Life in Nazi Germany

Scan to know more about this topic



Nazi Propaganda

### *The Nazi Cult of Motherhood*

- In Nazi Germany, children were told women were different from men.
- Boys were taught to be aggressive, masculine and steel-hearted and Girls were told to become Good Mothers and rear Pure-Blooded Aryan Children.
- Girls had to maintain purity of the race, distance from Jews, look after their home and teach their children Nazi values. But all mothers were not treated equally.
- Honour Crosses were awarded to those who encouraged women to produce more children.
- Bronze Cross for four children, silver for six and gold for eight or more. Women who maintained contact with Jews, Poles and Russians were paraded through the town with shaved heads, blackened faces and placards hanging around their necks announcing 'I have sullied the honour of the nation'.

### *The Art of Propaganda*

- Nazis termed mass killings as special treatment, final solution (for the Jews), euthanasia (for the Disabled), selection and disinfections 'Evacuation' meant deporting people to gas chambers.
- Gas Chambers were labelled as "Disinfection-areas", and looked like bathrooms equipped with fake shower heads.
- Nazi ideas were spread through Visual images, Films, Radio, Posters, Catchy Slogans and leaflets.
- Orthodox Jews were stereotyped and marked and were referred to as vermin, rats and pests.
- The Nazis made equal efforts to appeal to all the different sections of the population.

### *Nazi's Propoganda*

- They sought to win their support by suggesting that Nazis alone could solve all their problems.
- Many saw the world through Nazi eyes and spoke their mind in Nazi language. They felt hatred and anger surge inside them when they saw someone who looked like a Jew. But not every German was a Nazi.

### *Knowledge about the Holocaust*

- The Nazi killing operation was also called the Holocaust. It comes from the Greek word 'Holo' and 'Kaustos', which literally means completely burnt. It is used to describe the mass murder of Jews by German Nazis between 1933 and 1945.

## Know the Terms

- **Wall Street Exchange** : The name of the World's Biggest Stock Exchange located in the USA.
- **The Great Depression** : A Worldwide economic slump lasting from 1929 to 1935.
- **Reichstag** : Name given to the German Parliament.
- **Reparation** : Compensate for a wrong doing.
- **Proletarianisation** : To become impoverished to the level of Working Classes.
- **Axis Powers** : A group of countries, namely, Italy, Germany and Japan, Bulgaria, Hungary, Romania and Yugoslavia who opposed the Allied Power.
- **Allied Powers** : Formed by Britain, France, Russia and the USA.
- **Second World War** : Global war that took place from September 1939 to May 1945. About 50 million people were killed in this war.
- **Pearl Harbour** : Situated on the Hawaiian Island of Honolulu. It was the main base of the US Pacific Fleet.
- **Gestapo** : The Secret State Police in Nazi Germany.
- **Holocaust** : The persecution and mass murder of Jews by German Nazis between 1933 and 1945.
- **Propaganda** : Specific type of message directly aimed at influencing the opinion of people through the use of Posters, Films and Speeches.
- **Persecution** : Systematic and organised punishment of those belonging to a group or religion.
- **Concentration camp** : A camp where people were isolated and detained without due process of law. Typically, it was surrounded by electrified barbed wire fences.
- **Genocidal** : Killing on a large-scale leading to destruction of large sections of people.
- **Jungvolk** : A separate section for Nazi Boys upto 14 years of age.
- **Gypsy** : The groups that were classified as 'Gypsy' had their own community identity. Sinti and Roma were two such communities. Many of them traced their origin to India.
- **Usurers** : Moneylenders charging excessive interest; often used as a term of abuse.
- **Jew** : One whose religion is Judaism.
- **Pauperised** : Reduce to absolute poverty.
- **Ghetto** : A quarter of a city in which Jews were formerly required to live.

## Know the Dates

- **1889** : Adolf Hitler was born in Austria.
- **1918** : Establishment of Weimar Republic.
- **1919** : Germany signed the Treaty of Versailles.
- **1929** : The Economic Depression occurs in USA.
- **1933** : Hitler was made Chancellor of Germany.
- **1933 to 1945** : The mass murder of Jews by German Nazis.
- **1934** : Hitler became the President of Germany.
- **1935** : World War II, Italy attacked Ethiopia, German Rearmament. Hitler announced Germany would rebuilt its Military.
- **1936** : Hitler reoccupied Rhineland.
- **1937** : Attack of Japan on China during the Second World War.
- **1938** : German troops entered Austria. Integration of Germany and Austria.
- **1939** : Germany attacked Czechoslovakia.
- **1940** : Declaration of war by Italy on Britain and France and surrender of France.
- **1940-1944** : Ghettoisation of Jews.
- **8<sup>th</sup> April 1941** : Germany invaded the Balkans.
- **June, 1941** : Germany attacked the USSR.
- **1942** : United Nations Declaration signed by the Representatives of 26 Nations.
- **1943** : Defeat of Italy and Germany by the Allied Powers in North Africa.
- **1945** : Hitler committed suicide by gunshot in Berlin.



## (A) OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

1 Mark Each



## Stand Alone MCQs

- 1. What was the main reason for Germany's defeat in the First World War?**
- It had weak military strength.
  - The Allies were strengthened by the Entry of US.
  - It was not prepared for a massive war
  - It did not have support from Japan.

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

*Explanation:* Germany made initial gains by occupying France and Belgium. However, the Allies, strengthened by the US Entry in 1917, won, defeating Germany and the Central Powers in November 1918.

- 2. Why was the Treaty of Versailles hated by Germany?**
- Because Germany lost 75 Per cent of its Iron resources and was Demilitarised.
  - It forced German Citizens to become Slaves.
  - It didn't allow Germany to participate in any other war.
  - The Treaty did not consist terms asked by the German people.

Ans. Option (A) is correct.

*Explanation:* The Peace Treaty at Versailles with the Allies was a harsh and humiliating peace. Germany lost its overseas Colonies, a tenth of its population, 13 percent of its territories, 75 percent of its Iron, and 26 percent of its Coal to France, Poland, Denmark, and Lithuania. The Allied Powers Demilitarised Germany to weaken its power. Many Germans held the new Weimar Republic responsible for not only the defeat in the war but the disgrace at Versailles.

- 3. What was the reason for the Entry of US in the Second World War?**
- USSR overpowering USA
  - Japan bombed Pearl Harbour
  - The Berlin Pact
  - Treaty of Versailles

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

*Explanation:* Japan had occupied French Indo-China and was planning attacks on US naval bases in the Pacific. When Japan extended its support to Hitler and bombed the US base at Pearl Harbor, the US entered the Second World War. The War ended in May 1945 with Hitler's defeat and the US dropping of the atom bomb on Hiroshima in Japan.

- 4. When did Hitler try to seize control of Bavaria and capture Berlin?**
- 1919
  - 1923
  - 1929
  - 1933

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

*Explanation:* In 1923, Hitler planned to seize control of Bavaria, march to Berlin and capture power. He failed, was arrested, tried for treason, and later released. The Nazis could not effectively mobilise popular support till the early 1930s.

- 5. In the context of Germany, what was 'Volkswagen'?**
- Luxury vehicle
  - Sports vehicle
  - Vehicle of people below the poverty line
  - People's car

Ans. Option (D) is correct.

*Explanation:* Hitler assigned the responsibility of economic recovery to the economist Hjalmar Schacht who aimed at full production and full employment through a state-funded work-creation programme. This project produced the famous German Superhighways and the People's car, the Volkswagen.

- 6. What was the Nazi Youth Groups for children below 14 years of age known as?**
- Gypsies
  - Ghettoization
  - Jungvolk
  - Annihilation

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

*Explanation:* Nazi youth groups for children below 14 years of age were called Jungvolk. Ten-year-olds had to enter Jungvolk.

- 7. Which of the following statements is false about Soldiers in the World War I ?**
- The Soldiers, in reality, led miserable lives in trenches, survived with feeding on the copras.
  - They faced Poisonous Gas and enemy shelling and loss of Comrades.
  - All Soldiers were ready to die for their Country's honour and personal glory.
  - Aggressive propaganda glorified war.

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

*Explanation:* The media glorified trench life. The truth, however, was that Soldiers lived miserable lives in these trenches, trapped with rats feeding on corpses. They faced poisonous gas and enemy shelling and witnessed their ranks reduce rapidly. Aggressive war propaganda and national honor occupied center stage in the public sphere, while popular support grew for conservative Dictatorships that had recently come into being.

- 8. What was not a factor in the rise of Hitler ?**
- Disgrace at Versailles.
  - Nazi propoganda and Hitler's charismatic leadership.
  - Years of depression and Economic Crisis.
  - Weimer Republic.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The crisis in the economy, polity and Society formed the background to Hitler's rise to power. When the First World War broke out, he enrolled for the army, acted as a messenger in the front, became a corporal, and earned medals for Bravery. The German defeat horrified him and the Versailles Treaty made him furious. In 1919, he joined a small group called the German Workers' Party.

**9. Which of the following was the immediate factor for the Great Depression (1929-1932) ?**

- (A) The collapse of Wall Street Exchange.
- (B) Financial impact of World War I.
- (C) Fall in US Exports.
- (D) Collapse of Banks.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The collapse of Wall Street Exchange was the immediate factor for the Great Depression (1929-1932). German investments and industrial recovery were totally dependent on short-term loans, largely from the USA. This support was withdrawn when the Wall Street Exchange crashed in 1929. Fearing a fall in prices, people made frantic efforts to sell their shares. On one single day, 24 October, 13 million shares were sold. This was the start of the Great Economic Depression.

**10. Who among the given were called "November Criminals" ?**

- (A) Bolsheviks
- (B) Jews
- (C) Nazis
- (D) Socialists, Catholics and Democrats

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Those who supported the Weimar Republic, mainly Socialists, Catholics and Democrats, became easy targets of attack in the conservative nationalist circles. They were mockingly called the 'November criminals'. This mindset had a major impact on the political developments of the early 1930s.

**11. To whom had Mahatma Gandhi written a letter for International Peace?**

- (A) Benito Mussolini
- (B) Winston Churchill
- (C) Adolf Hitler
- (D) Mikhail Gorbachev

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Mahatma Gandhi had written a letter for International Peace to Hitler.

**12. The terrible destruction of human life has come to be known as the ?**

- (A) Final solution
- (B) Holocaust
- (C) Horrific
- (D) All of the above

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Information about Nazi practices had trickled out of Germany during the last years of the regime. While the Germans were preoccupied with their plight as a defeated nation emerging out of the rubble, the Jews wanted the world to remember the atrocities and sufferings they had endured during the Nazi killing operations – also called the Holocaust.

**13. Who offered Chancellorship to Hitler?**

- (A) Hindenburg
- (B) Winston Churchill
- (C) Benito Mussolini
- (D) Charlotte Beradt

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** On 30<sup>th</sup> January 1933, President Hindenburg offered the Chancellorship, the highest position in the Cabinet of Ministers, to Hitler. By now the Nazis had managed to rally the conservatives to their cause. Having acquired power, Hitler set out to dismantle the structures of Democratic rule.

**14. What is the term used for the German Parliament ?**

- (A) House of laws
- (B) Reichstag
- (C) White house
- (D) Parliament of Germany

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**15. Why was the famous 'Enabling Act' passed?**

- (A) To establish Autocratic rule in Germany.
- (B) To establish Dictatorship in Germany.
- (C) To establish Democracy in Germany
- (D) To establish Socialism

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** On 3<sup>rd</sup> March 1933, the famous Enabling Act was passed. This Act established Dictatorship in Germany. It gave Hitler all powers to sideline Parliament and rule by Decree. All Political Parties and Trade Unions were banned except for the Nazi Party and its affiliates. The State established complete control over the Economy, Media, Army and Judiciary.

**16. Name the Film which was made to create hatred for Jews.**

- (A) The Eternal Jew
- (B) The Jews
- (C) The immortal Jew
- (D) Mein Kampf

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Propaganda Films were made to create hatred for Jews. The most infamous film was The Eternal Jew. Orthodox Jews were stereotyped and marked. They were shown with flowing beards wearing kaftans, whereas in reality it was difficult to distinguish German Jews by their outward appearance because they were a highly assimilated community.



## Assertion and Reason Based MCQs

**Directions :** In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as :

- (A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

**1. Assertion (A) :** Nazi ideas were spread only through newspapers.

**Reason (R) :** The Nazis made equal efforts to appeal to all the different sections of the population.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**2. Assertion(A) :** Germany retaliated with passive resistance and printed paper currency recklessly. With too much printed money in circulation, the value of the German Mark fell.

**Reason (R) :** The Americans intervened and bailed Germany out of the crisis by introducing the Dawes Plan, which reworked the terms of reparation to ease the financial burden on Germans.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Germany had fought the war largely on loans and had to pay war reparations in gold. This depleted gold reserves at a time resources were scarce. In 1923 Germany refused to pay, and the French occupied its leading industrial area, Ruhr, to claim their coal.

**3. Assertion (A) :** Hitler effectively mobilised popular support in Germany.

**Reason (R) :** Hitler was a powerful speaker. His passion and his words moved people.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Hitler effectively mobilised popular support in Germany. Hitler was a powerful speaker. His passion and his words moved people. He promised to undo the injustice of the Versailles Treaty and restore the dignity of German People.

He promised employment for those looking for work and a secure future for the youth.

**4. Assertion (A) :** Nazism became popular in Germany.

**Reason(R) :** The Great Depression that hit the country was apparently the biggest reason for Nazism's popularity.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**5. Assertion (A) :** The USA was unwilling to join World War II.

**Reason (R) :** The USA feared the comeback of economic problems that the First World War had.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**6. Assertion (A) :** In 1933 Hitler said: 'In my state the Mother is the most important citizen.'

**Reason (R) :** In Nazi Germany all Mothers were treated equally.

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** In Nazi Germany all Mothers were not treated equally. Women who bore racially undesirable children were punished and those who produced racially desirable children were awarded.



## Case-based MCQs

**I. Read the source given below and answer the following questions :**

In May 1945, Germany surrendered to the Allies. Anticipating what was coming, Hitler, his Propaganda Minister Goebbels and his entire family committed suicide collectively in his Berlin bunker in April. At the end of the war, an International Military Tribunal at Nuremberg was set up to prosecute Nazi War Criminals for Crimes against Peace, for War Crimes and Crimes Against Humanity. Germany's conduct during the war, especially those actions which came to be called Crimes Against Humanity, raised serious moral and ethical questions and invited worldwide condemnation. What were these acts?

Under the shadow of the Second World War, Germany had waged a Genocidal war, which resulted in the mass murder of selected groups of innocent civilians of Europe. The number of people killed included 6 million Jews, 200,000 Gypsies, 1 million Polish Civilians, 70,000 Germans who were considered mentally and physically disabled, besides innumerable political opponents. Nazis devised an unprecedented means of killing people, that is, by gassing them in various killing centres like Auschwitz. The Nuremberg Tribunal sentenced only eleven leading Nazis to death. Many others were imprisoned for life. The retribution did come, yet the punishment of the Nazis was far short of the brutality and extent of their crimes. The Allies did not want to be as harsh on defeated Germany as they had been after the First World War.

**1. When did Germany surrender to the Allies?**

- (A) In July 1945
- (B) In May 1945
- (C) In March 1945
- (D) In June 1945

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** In May 1945, Germany surrendered to the Allies.

**2. Killing on a large scale of people leading to destruction is called**

- (A) Accidental War
- (B) Suicidal War
- (C) Genocidal War
- (D) Artificial War

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Killing on a large scale of people leading to destruction is called Genocidal War. Under the shadow of the Second World War, Germany had waged a Genocidal war, which resulted in the mass murder of selected groups of innocent civilians of Europe. The number of people killed included 6 million Jews, 200,000 Gypsies, 1 million Polish Civilians, 70,000 Germans who were considered mentally and physically disabled, besides innumerable political opponents.

3. In 1941 Allied power of UK and France were also joined by the

(A) USSR and Japan      (B) Japan and China  
 (C) Italy and Germany    (D) USSR and USA

Ans. Option (D) is correct.

**Explanation:** In 1941 Allied power of UK and France were also joined by the USSR and USA.

4. Which category of people were the biggest victim of Nazis?

(A) Gypsies  
 (B) Jews  
 (C) Polish Civilians  
 (D) Mentally and physically disabled Germans.

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

**Explanation:** Jews were the biggest victim of Nazis. 6 million Jews were killed by Nazis.

## II. Read the source given below and answer the following questions :

### Political Radicalism and Economic Crises

Political Radicalisation was only heightened by the economic crisis of 1923. Germany had fought the war largely on loans and had to pay war reparations in Gold. This depleted gold reserves at a time resources were scarce. In 1923 Germany refused to pay, and the French occupied its leading industrial area, Ruhr, to claim their coal. Germany retaliated with passive resistance and printed paper currency recklessly. With too much printed money in circulation, the value of the German Mark fell. In April the US Dollar was equal to 24,000 Marks, in July, 353,000 Marks, in August 4,621,000 Marks and at 98,860,000 Marks by December, the figure had run into trillions. As the value of the Mark collapsed, prices of goods soared. The image of Germans carrying cartloads of currency notes to buy a loaf of bread was widely publicised evoking worldwide sympathy. This crisis came to be known as hyperinflation, a situation when prices rise phenomenally high.

1. Germany had fought the War largely on loans and had to pay war reparations in

(A) Gold                         (B) Silver  
 (C) Coal                        (D) Currency

Ans. Option (A) is correct.

**Explanation:** Germany had fought the war largely on loans and had to pay war reparations in Gold. This depleted Gold reserves at a time resources were scarce.

2. Germany retaliated with passive resistance and printed \_\_\_\_\_ currency recklessly.

(A) Plastic                       (B) Paper  
 (C) Bronze                      (D) Copper

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

**Explanation:** Germany retaliated with passive resistance and printed paper currency recklessly. With too much printed money in circulation, the value of the German Mark fell.

3. What is the currency of Germany called?

(A) Rupee                       (B) Pound  
 (C) Dollar                      (D) Mark

Ans. Option (D) is correct.

**Explanation:** German currency is called Mark.

4. When was the US Dollar equal to 4,621,000 Marks?

(A) In April                      (B) In August  
 (C) In July                       (D) In December

Ans. Option (A) is correct.

**Explanation:** In April the US Dollar was equal to 24,000 Marks, in July 353,000 Marks, in August 4,621,000 Marks and at 98,860,000 Marks by December, the figure had run into trillions.

## III. Read the source given below and answer the following questions :

The crisis in the economy, policy and society formed the background to Hitler's rise to power. Born in 1889 in Austria, Hitler spent his youth in poverty. When the First World War broke out, he enrolled for the Army, acted as a Messenger in the front, became a corporal, and earned medals for bravery. The German defeat horrified him and the Versailles Treaty made him furious. In 1919; he joined a small group called the German Workers' Party. He subsequently took over the Organisation and renamed it the National Socialist German Workers' Party. This Party came to be known as the Nazi Party.

In 1923, Hitler planned to seize control of Bavaria, march to Berlin and capture power. He failed, was arrested, tried for treason, and later released.

The Nazis could not effectively mobilise popular support till the early 1930s. It was during the Great Depression that Nazism became a mass movement. As we have seen, after 1929, banks collapsed and businesses shut down, workers lost their jobs and the middle classes were threatened with destitution. In such a situation Nazi Propaganda stirred hopes of a better future. In 1928, the Nazi Party got no more than 2.6 per cent votes in the Reichstag – The German Parliament. By 1932, it had become the largest Party with 37 per cent votes.

1. When did Hitler enrol in the army?

- (A) When the Second World War broke out.
- (B) When the Second World War got over.
- (C) When the First World War broke out.
- (D) When the First World War ended.

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

*Explanation:* Hitler enrolled in the army when the First World War broke out.

2. When did Hitler join the German Workers' Party?

- (A) In 1914
- (B) In 1919
- (C) In 1916
- (D) In 1918

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

*Explanation:* The German defeat horrified him and the Versailles Treaty made him furious. In 1919, he joined a small group called the German Workers' Party. He subsequently took over the Organisation and renamed it the National Socialist German Workers' Party. This Party came to be known as the Nazi Party.

3. Till the early, \_\_\_\_\_ the Nazis could not effectively mobilise popular support.

- (A) 1920's
- (B) 1930's
- (C) 1940's
- (D) 1950's

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

*Explanation:* The Nazis could not effectively mobilise popular support till the early 1930s. It was during the Great Depression that Nazism became a Mass Movement. As we have seen, after 1929, banks collapsed and businesses shut down, workers lost their jobs and the middle classes were threatened with destitution.

4. What is the term used for the German Parliament?

- (A) House of Laws
- (B) Reichstag
- (C) White House
- (D) Parliament of Germany

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

*Explanation:* In 1928, the Nazi Party got no more than 2.6 per cent votes in the Reichstag – The German Parliament.



## (B) SUBJECTIVE QUESTIONS



### Short Answer Type Questions

(3 Marks Each)

Q. 1. Describe any three effects of the Great Depression (1929-1932) on Germany. [Board Term I, 2016]

OR

What was the impact of the 'Great Economic Crisis' on the economy of Germany? Explain.

[Board Term I, 2012]

Ans. Great Economic Depression :

- (i) Industrial output fell by 40 per cent; Workers lost their jobs and they were paid low wages.
- (ii) Sharp fall in agricultural prices
- (iii) Women were severely affected. 1×3=3

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

Q. 2. Describe any three inherent defects in the Weimar Constitution that made it vulnerable to Dictatorship. [Board Term I, 2016]

OR

Describe any three factors which made the Weimar Republic politically fragile. [Board Term I, 2015]

OR

State three reasons responsible for the failure of the Weimar Republic. [Board Term I, 2014]

OR

State any three weaknesses of the Weimar Republic. [Board Term I, 2012]

OR

State any three factors which made the Weimar Republic politically fragile. [Board Term I, 2012]

OR

Describe the problems faced by the Weimar Republic. (NCERT)

Ans. Defects :

- (i) The Weimar Constitution was based on proportional representation.
- (ii) Article 48 gave President the power to impose emergency, suspend civil rights.
- (iii) Thus, in a short time, 20 different cabinets were formed and people lost faith. (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

Detailed Answer :

Factors that made the Weimar Republic politically fragile were :

- (i) Politically the Weimar Republic was fragile.
- (ii) The Weimar Constitution had some inherent defects which made it unstable and vulnerable to Dictatorship.
- (iii) Due to proportional representation, One Party Rule became a near impossible task, leading to a rule by coalitions.
- (iv) Another defect was Article 48, which gave the President the powers to impose Emergency, suspend Civil Rights and rule by Decree.
- (v) Within a short period of time, many governments changed and this made people lose confidence in the Democratic Parliamentary System. (Any three) (1 × 3 = 3)

**[A]** Q. 3. Describe any three conditions of the Treaty of Versailles. R [Board Term I, 2016]

OR

Explain any three effects of the Treaty of Versailles over Germany. R [Board Term I, 2014]

OR

State any three major effects of the First World War on Germany. R [Board Term I, 2014]

**Ans.** Impact of the Treaty of Versailles over Germany :

- (i) Germany lost its overseas colonies.
- (ii) It was demilitarised.
- (iii) The Allied armies occupied the resource-rich Rhineland.
- (iv) It lost 75 per cent of its Iron and 26 per cent of its Coal to France, Poland, Denmark & Lithuania.

(Any three) (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013]

**Detailed Answer :**

**The Treaty of Versailles was the root cause of the rise of Nazism in Germany and the Second World War.**

- (i) After signing of the Treaty, Germany lost its possession of the Overseas colonies.
- (ii) Also, it lost one-tenth of its population, 13 per cent of its territories, 75 per cent of Iron, 26 per cent of Coal resources to France, Poland, Denmark and Lithuania.
- (iii) The Allied Powers demilitarised Germany to weaken its power.
- (iv) Germany was asked to pay a compensation amount of 6 Billion Pounds as it was accused for causing the war.
- (v) Rhineland, a resource-rich region, was occupied by the Allied Powers for much of the 1920's.

(Any three) (1 × 3 = 3)

**Commonly Made Error**

- The students write about the reasons for the rise of Nazism in Germany.

**Answering Tip**

- The students should mention about the economic loss that Germany suffered due to the terms laid in the Treaty of Versailles.

Q. 4. Name the country that defeated Germany in the First World War. State two effects of defeat in Germany. R [IDDE Term I, 2014]

**Ans.** US joined the Allies in 1917 and defeated Germany and the Central Powers.

**Effects :**

- (i) The defeat of Germany resulted in the abdication of German Emperor. This gave an opportunity for the Parliamentary Parties to bring a change in German Politics.
- (ii) A Democratic Constitution with a federal structure was formed by the National Assembly, which met

at Weimar and the Weimar Republic came into existence. (1+2=3)

Q. 5. State the verdict of Nuremberg Tribunal. Why did the Allies avoid hard punishment on Germany? R [DDE Term I, 2014]

**Ans.** The Nuremberg Tribunal, which was set up to prosecute the Nazis for committing grave crime against humanity which involved killing of innocent civilians in Europe, sentenced only 11 Nazis to death. Some were given life imprisonment.

Allies avoided harsh punishment on Germany because :

- (i) They did not want to repeat the mistakes committed after the First World War where they imposed harsh terms on Germany by virtue of Treaty of Versailles, which resulted in the rise of Hitler.
  - (ii) Treaty of Versailles was physiologically damaging for the Germans and also proved to be a national shame. The treaty had sown the seeds of the Second World War.
- This made the Allies cautious enough of not being much harsh on Germans again. (1+2=3)

**Commonly Made Error**

- The Nuremberg Tribunal is taken to be as a normal tribunal formed to bring criminals to punishment.

**Answering Tip**

- Nuremberg Tribunal was formed to conduct trials for crimes committed in Germany during the Holocaust.

Q. 6. State three features of Political Radicalism in Germany. A [Board Term I, 2013]

**Ans.** Features of Political Radicalism :

- (i) The Political situation that came into view after the rise of Weimar Republic is termed as Political Radicalism.
- (ii) The demand and the uprising for Soviet Style Governance were suppressed by the Weimar Republic and this enraged them to form the Communist Party.
- (iii) Both Communists and Socialists wanted Political Radicalism against Hitler's rule. (1×3=3)

**[A]** Q. 7. Explain the circumstances under which Nazism became popular in Germany. U, A [Board Term I, 2016, 2015]

OR

What is Nazism? How did it become popular in Germany? Explain. [Board Term I, 2014]

OR

Discuss why did Nazism become popular in Germany by 1930. [Board Term I, 2013]

[NCERT]

- Ans.** Circumstances under which Nazism became popular were :
- Hitler was a great Orator. His passion and words moved people.
  - He promised to build a strong nation.
  - He promised to restore dignity of the Germans and undo the injustice of the Treaty of Versailles.
  - He promised Employment for those looking for work and a secure future for the youth.
  - He promised to weed out all Foreign influences and resist all Foreign conspiracies against Germany.
  - Hitler devised a new style of politics. Nazis held massive rallies and public meetings as to show the strength and confidence for Hitler.
  - The Red banners with the Swastika, ritualised rounds of applause and the Nazi salute after the speeches, were all part of this spectacle of power.
  - Nazi propaganda projected Hitler as a Messiah or a Saviour.

(Any three) (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

#### Commonly Made Error

- The reasons for popularity of Nazism is restricted only to Hitler's participation in it.

#### Answering Tip

- The Great Depression that hit the country was apparently the biggest reason for Nazism's popularity.

**Q. 8. What was the impact of Hitler's attack on Soviet Union in June 1941 ?** [Board Term I, 2016]

- Ans.** (i) In this historic blunder, Hitler exposed the German Western Front to British aerial bombing and the Eastern Front to the powerful Soviet Armies.
- (ii) The Soviet Red Army inflicted a crushing and humbling defeat on Germany at Stalingrad.
- (iii) The Soviet Red Army hounded out the retreating German soldiers until they reached Berlin, establishing Soviet hegemony over the entire Eastern Europe. (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

**Q. 9. How did the Nazis demonstrate support for Hitler ?** [Board Term I, 2016]

- Ans.** (i) The Nazis held Massive Rallies and Public Meetings to demonstrate the support for Hitler and instill the sense of unity among the people.

- (ii) The Red banners with the Swastika, the Nazi salute and the ritualised rounds of applause after the speeches were all part of this spectacle of power.

- (iii) Nazi propaganda skilfully projected Hitler as a Messiah, a Saviour, as someone who had arrived to deliver people from their distress.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1×3=3)

**Q. 10. Explain three reasons that led to the German invasion of Soviet Union.** [Board Term I, 2015]

**Ans.** Reasons leading to the German invasion of Soviet Union were :

- Hitler dreamt of settling the German with pure Aryan blood in the Asian steppe region and of using the Jews and Asians as Slaves.
- He wanted to ensure Food supplies for the Germans. The Germans and Russians had serious differences over the Balkan, where no clear line demarcation had been worked out.
- Hitler wanted to eradicate Communism. (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015]

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students mention that the Nazism became popular with the German invasion of Soviet Union.

#### Answering Tip

- The students need to elaborate Hitler's Philosophy about Aryan race.

**Q. 11. Explain Hitler's Ideology related to the Geopolitical Concept of *Lebensraum*.** [Board Term I, 2015, 2012, 2011]

**Ans.** Hitler's Geopolitical Concept of *Lebensraum* :

- He believed that New territories had to be acquired for Settlement.
- This would enhance the area of the Mother Country, while enabling the settlers on new land to retain an intimate link with the place of their origin.
- It would also enhance the material resources and power of the German nation. (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015]

#### Commonly Made Error

- Lebensraum* was taken as a New Policy given by Nazism.

#### Answering Tip

- Lebensraum* was the basic principle of Nazi Foreign Policy and is a Geopolitical concept.

**Q. 12. Describe the Ideology of Racial Hierarchy propounded by Hitler.** [Board Term I, 2015]

**Ans. Ideology of Racial Hierarchy propounded by Hitler :**

- No equality between people. Blond, blue-eyed, Nordic German Aryans were at the top.
- Jews were located at the lowest rung of the society. They came to be regarded as an anti-race, the arch-enemies of the Aryans.
- All the coloured people were placed in between depending upon their external features.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] (1×3=3)

**AI Q. 13. Explain briefly the theory of Herbert Spencer used by Hitler.** [Board Term I, 2013]

**Ans. Theory :**

- Herbert Spencer propounded the Idea of 'Survival of the Fittest'.
- According to this idea, only those species survived on Earth which could adapt them to changing climate conditions.
- Used by Racist Thinkers and Politicians to justify Imperial rule over conquered people. According to Nazi argument, the strongest race would survive and the weak ones would perish. (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013]

**AI Q. 14. How were the ideas of Darwin and Herbert Spencer adopted by Hitler or Nazis ? Explain.** [A]

**Ans.** (i) Hitler's Racism was heavily borrowed from Thinkers like Charles Darwin and Herbert Spencer.  
(ii) The ideas written by Darwin in 'The Origin of Species' natural selection was used by Hitler to justify his Imperial rule over conquered people.  
(iii) Adopting the Idea of the 'Survival of the Fittest' propounded by Herbert Spencer, the Nazi Government suggested that the strongest race, that is Nordic German Aryans would survive and the weak ones would perish. (1×3= 3)

**Q. 15. Describe the role of Youth Organisations in Nazi Germany.** [Board Term I, 2016]

OR

Mention three Youth Organisations that were responsible for educating German Youth in the Spirit of National Socialism. [Board Term I, 2015]

OR

Describe the Youth Organisations in Nazi Germany. [Board Term I, 2013]

OR

Explain any three methods adopted by Hitler for educating German Youth in the spirit of National Socialism. [Board Term I, 2012]

**Ans. Methods :**

- Youth Organisations were made responsible for educating German young in the Spirit of National Socialism. Ten years old had to enter 'Jungvolk' the Nazi Youth Group.
- At 14, all the Boys had to join Nazi youth Organisation called 'Hitler Youth' where they learnt to worship war, glorify aggression and violence, condemn Democracy and hate Jews, Communists and Gypsies.
- After a period of rigorous ideological and physical training, they joined the 'Labour Service', and later, they joined the Armed Forces and entered one of the Youth Organisations. (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

**Q. 16. Explain any three effects of Nazism on the School System.** [Board Term I, 2015, 2012]

**Ans. Effects of Nazism on the School System :**

- Hitler was fanatically interested in the Youth of the Country. He believed in teaching the Nazi Ideology to the Students.
- Jewish Teachers who were seen as politically unreliable were dismissed from service.
- Children were segregated – German and Jews could not sit or play together.
- Good German children were subjected to a process of Nazi Schooling, a prolonged period of Ideological training.
- School Textbooks were rewritten to glorify and justify the Nazi Ideas of Racial Superiority.
- Children were taught to be loyal, submissive and hate the Jews.
- Sports were introduced to nurture violence and aggression among students. Hitler believed that 'Boxing could make children iron hearted, strong and masculine. (Any three points)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] (1×3=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- The students mention about the general upbringing of the children.

#### Answering Tip

- The Education System has to be talked about keeping in mind Hitler's Doctrine of the spread of Nazism.

**Q. 17. List the communities which were classified as Undesirable in Nazi Germany.** [Board Term I, 2014]

**Ans. Undesirable communities in Nazi Germany were :**

- Gypsies and Blacks those living in Nazi Germany.
- Russians and Poles were considered subhuman.
- Jews too were inferior, threatening biological purity of the 'Superior Aryan' Race.

(1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015]

**Q. 18. Describe the role of Propaganda Films in creating hatred for Jews.** [Board Term I, 2013]

- Ans.** (i) Most infamous film was the 'Eternal Jew' in which orthodox Jews were stereotyped and mocked.  
(ii) They were shown with flowing beards wearing kaftans.  
(iii) They were referred to as vermin, rats and pests. Their movements were compared to those of rodents.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015]  
 $(1 \times 3 = 3)$

**(ii) Weakness of Weimar Republic :** The Weimar Constitution had some inherent defects which made it unstable and vulnerable to Dictatorship. Due to proportional representation, One Party Rule became an impossible task, leading to a rule by coalitions. Another defect was Article 48, which gave the President the power to impose emergency, suspend Civil Rights and Rule by Decree.

**(iii) Treaty of Versailles :** Germany was forced to sign the Treaty of Versailles with the Allied Powers.

This made Germany to lose its Overseas Colonies, a tenth of its population, 13 per cent of its territories and many more. The Allied Powers demilitarised Germany. The Allied Armies also occupied the resource rich Rhineland.

The War guilt clause forced Germany to pay £ 6 Billion as War Damages to the Allied Powers.

**(iv) The Economic crisis :** German Economy was worst hit. Industrial production was reduced to 40 per cent. Due to Great Economic Depression, the National Income of the USA fell by half, leading to shut down of the Factories. The Exports fell down and Farmers suffered the most during the Depression.

**(v) Mass unemployment :** Workers of Germany lost their jobs and were paid reduced wages. Unemployed youth played cards or lined up at Local Employment Exchange. Jobs disappeared and youth took to criminal activities.

**(vi) German people thought that Hitler would be a Good Dictator as he promised to undo the injustice of Treaty of Versailles.** He also promised to give Employment to those looking for work. Later, the Nazi Party became the largest Party with 37 per cent votes in Reichstag. (Any five)  
 $(1 \times 5 = 5)$

[CBSE marking scheme 2013]

**Q. 1. State any five steps taken by Hitler to establish his Dictatorial rule in Germany.** [CBSE Board Term I, 2016]

OR

**Explain any five features of Political Policy adopted by Hitler after coming to power in 1933.**

[CBSE Board Term I, 2015]

**Ans.** Features of Political Policy adopted by Hitler :

- (i) Suspended Civil Rights and introduced the Enabling Act.  
(ii) Communists sent to Concentration camps.  
(iii) All Political Parties and Trade Unions except the Nazi Party were banned in Germany.  
(iv) State control over Economy, Media, Army and Judiciary.  
(v) Creation of special Surveillance and Security Forces.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016 & 2015]  
 $(1 \times 5 = 5)$

**Q. 2. Mention five important consequences of Nazism in Germany.** [Board Term I, DDE-2016, 2014]

**Ans. Consequences of Nazism :**

- (i) It pulled the country out of economic crisis.  
(ii) Hitler tried to make Germany a powerful country, enhanced its Military.  
(iii) All Political Parties except Nazi party were banned.  
(iv) The Socialists, the Communists and the Jews were given harsh treatment as they were blamed of German defeat in World War I.  
(v) Trade Unions were banned.  
(vi) A Massive programme of Militarism was launched and preparation for War began in a big way.

(Any Five)  $(1 \times 5 = 5)$

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

**Q. 3. Explain briefly the main causes of the rise of Nazi Dictatorship in Germany.** [Board Term I, 2013]

**Ans.** The main causes of rise of Nazi Dictatorship in Germany were as follows :

- (i) The First World War defeat.

**Q. 4. Why was Nazi Propaganda effective in creating a hatred for the Jews? Explain any five reasons.**

[Board Term I, 2015, 2012] [NCERT]

**Ans. Reasons :**

- (i) The Nazi regime used Language and Media with care.  
(ii) They used chilling terms. They never used the words 'kill' or 'murder'.  
(iii) Mass killing was termed as special treatment leading towards the final solution (for the Jews).  
(iv) Nazi ideas were spread through visual images, films, radio, posters, etc.  
(v) Propaganda films were made to create hatred for Jews.  
(vi) They were referred to as vermin, rats, pests. Nazism worked on minds of the people.

(Any five)  $(1 \times 5 = 5)$

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015, 2012]

**Commonly Made Error**

- The students only explain about mass killing of the Jews.

**Answering Tip**

- Mention the points related to the spread of Nazism.

**Q. 5. Highlight any five peculiar features of Nazi thinking.** R [Board Term I, 2014]

**OR**

**What are the peculiar features of Nazi thinking ?**

[NCERT]

**Ans.** The peculiar features of Nazi thinking are :

- There was no equality between people, but only a Racial Hierarchy. In this view, blond, blue-eyed, Nordic German Aryans were at the top, while the Jews were located at the lowest rung. All other coloured people were placed in between, depending upon their external features.
- The Aryan Race was the finest. It had to retain its purity, become stronger and dominate the world.
- Nazis glorified war. Their only aim was to unite All people of the Aryan race under one state that is Germany.
- Hitler believed that new territories had to be acquired for settlement. It would enhance the material resources and power of the German nation.
- Nazis wanted only a society of pure and healthy Nordic Aryans. They alone were considered 'Desirables'.
- Nazis hated Jews. They terrorised, pauperised and segregated them and compelled them to leave the Country.
- Children were taught to be loyal and submissive, hate Jews and worship Hitler.
- While Boys were taught to be aggressive, masculine and steel-hearted, girls were told that they had to become Good Mothers and rear pure-blooded Aryan children. (Any five) (1×5=5)

**Q. 6. How did the Nazis proceed to realise their Murderous Racial Ideology by eliminating the Undesirables? Explain.** U [DDE Term I, 2014]

- Ans.**
- Once in power, the Nazis quickly began to implement their dream of creating an exclusive Racial Community of pure Germans by physically eliminating all those who were seen as 'Undesirable' in the extended Empire as they were mentally or physically unfit Germans, Gypsies, Blacks, Russians and Poles.
  - But, Jews remained the worst sufferers in Nazi Germany. They were Stereotyped as 'Killers of Christ and Usurers'.
  - Until Medieval times, Jews were barred from owning land. They survived mainly through Trade and Money lending. They lived in separately marked areas called 'Ghettos'.
  - They were often persecuted through periodically organised violence and expulsion from land. All

this had a precursor in the Traditional Christian hostility towards Jews for being the Killers of Christ.

**(v)** However, Hitler's hatred of the Jews was based on Pseudo-scientific theories of race, which held that conversion was no solution to 'the Jewish problem'. It could be solved only through their total elimination. (1 × 5 = 5)

**Q. 7. Highlight five main features of Nazi Schooling, to establish a strong Nazi Society.** R

[Board Term I, 2016]

**OR**

**Highlight five important features of Education imparted in Nazi Schools.** [Board Term I, 2015]

**Ans.** Important features of education imparted in Nazi Schools :

- Children were segregated. The Germans and the Jews could not sit or play together. Subsequently, undesirable children like Jews and the physically handicapped; the Gypsies were thrown out of Schools.
- All Schools were cleansed or purified. This meant that Teachers who were Jews or seen as politically unreliable were dismissed.
- Good German Children were subjected to a process of Nazi schooling, a prolonged period of Ideological Training.
- Boxing was introduced as Hitler believed that it could make children iron-hearted, strong and masculine.
- School Text books were rewritten.
- Children were taught to be loyal and to hate Jews and worship Hitler. (Any five) (1×5=5)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

**Q. 8. Explain the status of women in the German Society under Nazism.** A

[Board Term I, 2016, 2012]

**OR**

**How did the assigned role for women by Nazis help in the establishment of the Racial State? How were women perceived in Nazi Germany?** R [Board Term I, 2014]

**OR**

**Explain Hitler's Ideology regarding Women and his policy towards them.**

[Board Term I, 2012]

**OR**

**Explain what role women had in Nazi Society.**

[NCERT]

**Ans.** Status of women in Germany :

- Children in Nazi Germany were told that women were radically different from men.
- While Boys were taught to be aggressive, masculine and steel-hearted, girls were told to be Good mothers and rear Pure-blooded Aryan children. They had to teach Nazi values to their Children.

- (iii) Women bearing Undesirable children were punished and those bearing Desirable were awarded.
- (iv) Girls had to maintain the purity of race.
- (v) They had to keep distance from the Jews, look after their home and teach Nazi values to their children.
- (vi) To encourage women to produce more children, a Bronze cross was given for four, Silver for six and Gold for eight or more children.
- (vii) Those who maintained contacts with the Jews, Poles or Russians were severely punished.

(Any five)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1×5=5)

**Detailed Answer:**

- (i) Children in Nazi Germany were told that women were radically different from men.
- (ii) The fight for equal rights for men and women that had become part of democratic struggles around the World was wrong and it would lead to the destruction of the society. While Boys were taught to be aggressive, masculine and Girls were told that they had to become Good Mothers and rear Pure blooded Aryan Children.
- (iii) Girls had to maintain the purity of the race, distance themselves from Jews, look after the home, and teach their children about Nazi values. They had to be the bearers of the Aryan culture and race.
- (iv) In Nazi Germany, women who bore Racially Desirable children were rewarded with concession

in Shops, on Theatre tickets and Railway fares. They were also given favoured treatment in Hospitals. Women those who produced racially Undesirable children were punished.

- (v) All Aryan women who deviated from the prescribed Code of Conduct were publicly condemned and severely punished. (1×5=5)

- Q. 9. Mention three ways in which the World gained knowledge about Holocaust.** □

[Board Term I, 2014]

**OR**

**What event in history is known as the Holocaust? How did the World come to know about the Holocaust ? Explain.** [Board Term I, 2012]

**Ans.** The persecution and mass murder of Jews by German Nazis between 1933 and 1945 is known as the Holocaust.

**Sources :**

- (i) Information and full horror of the Holocaust was revealed after Hitler's death.
- (ii) From Diaries, Notebooks, left behind by many Ghetto inhabitants.
- (iii) Many of the Jews survived to tell the stories.
- (iv) Memoirs, Fictions, Documentaries and Poetry in many parts of the World also revealed information about Holocaust.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2014] (1+4=5)



# MAP WORK

**Q. 1.** Locate and label the following items on the given outline map of world :

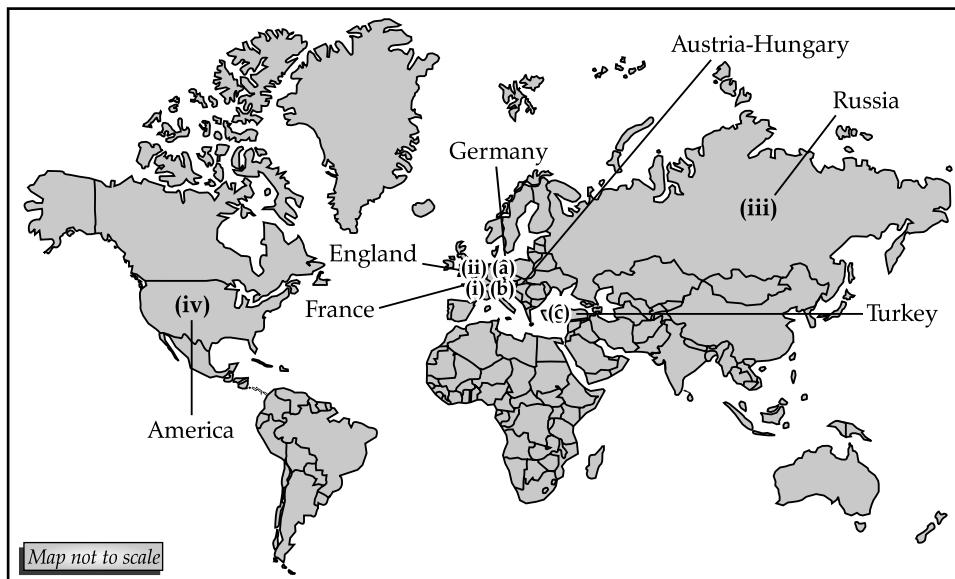
**Central Powers :**

- (a) Germany      (b) Austria-Hungary      (c) Turkey (Ottoman Empire)

**Allied Powers :**

- (i) France      (ii) England      (iii) Russia      (iv) America

**Ans.**



**Q. 2.** Locate and label the following items on the given outline map of world :

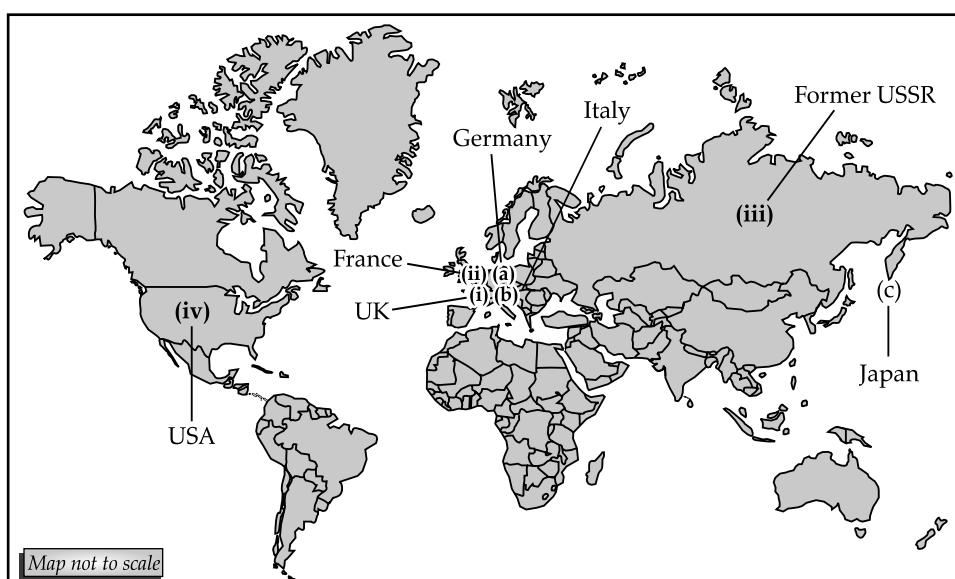
**Central Powers :**

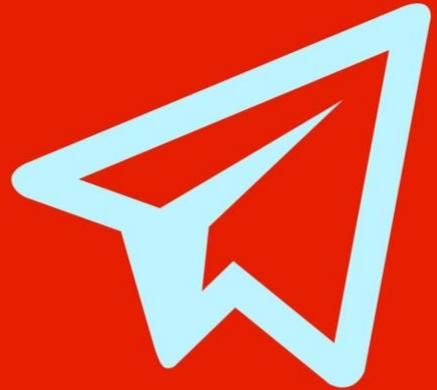
- (a) Germany      (b) Italy      (c) Japan

**Allied Powers :**

- (i) UK      (ii) France      (iii) Former USSR      (iv) USA

**Ans.**





# NtseBookCorner

Join Us On Telegram  
**@NtseBookCorner**

► **CLICK HERE To Get More Term 2 Material  
For Your Preparation.**



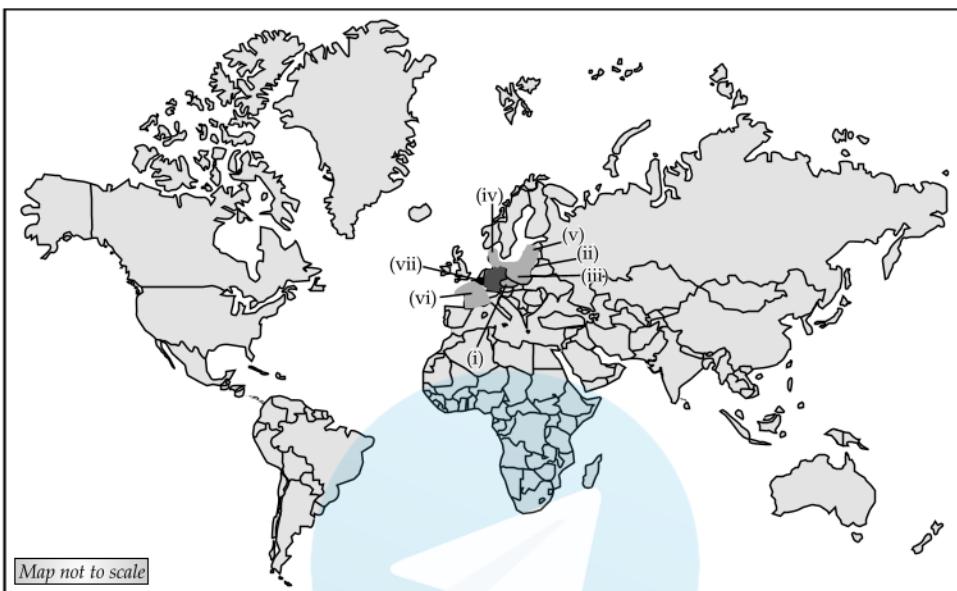
/ntsebookcorner

Q. 3. Locate and label the following items on the given outline map of world :

Territories under German expansion (Nazi power) :

- |                                                       |               |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| (i) Australia                                         | (ii) Poland   |
| (iii) Czechoslovakia (Only Slovakia shown in the map) |               |
| (iv) Denmark                                          | (v) Lithuania |
| (vi) France                                           | (vii) Belgium |

Ans.



**@NtseBookCorner**  
Join Us On Telegram



## UNIT 2 : Contemporary India-I

CHAPTER

## 3

## DRAINAGE\*

## Syllabus

- Major rivers and tributaries.
- Lakes.
- Role of rivers in the economy.
- Pollution of rivers.

\*Note : Only Map items as given in the Map list from this chapter to be evaluated in Exam.



## Learning Outcomes

- Identify the river systems of the country and explain the role of rivers in the human society.

## Revision Notes

## Major Rivers and Tributaries

Join Us On Telegram

## Drainage Patterns

- The term Drainage describes the river system of an area.
- The area drained by a single river system is called a Drainage Basin.
- Any elevated area, such as a mountain or an upland, separates two drainage basins. Such upland is known as a Water Divide.
- The world's largest Drainage Basin is that of the Amazon River.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topicDrainage  
Patterns

## Drainage System in India

- The Drainage systems of India are mainly controlled by the broad relief features of the subcontinent.
- The Indian rivers are divided into two major groups: the Himalayan rivers and the Peninsular rivers.
- Most of the Himalayan rivers are perennial, therefore, they have water throughout the year.
- The Himalayan rivers have long courses from their source to the sea.
- A large number of Peninsular rivers are seasonal, as their flow is dependent on rainfall.

## The Himalayan Rivers

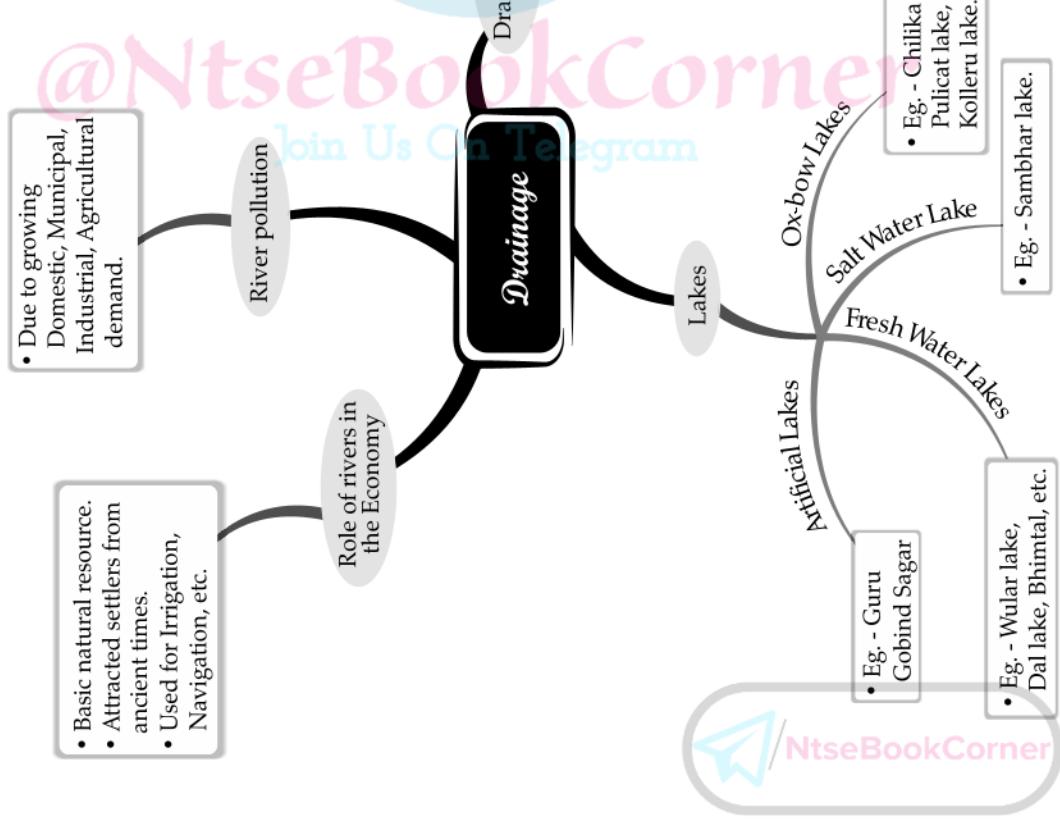
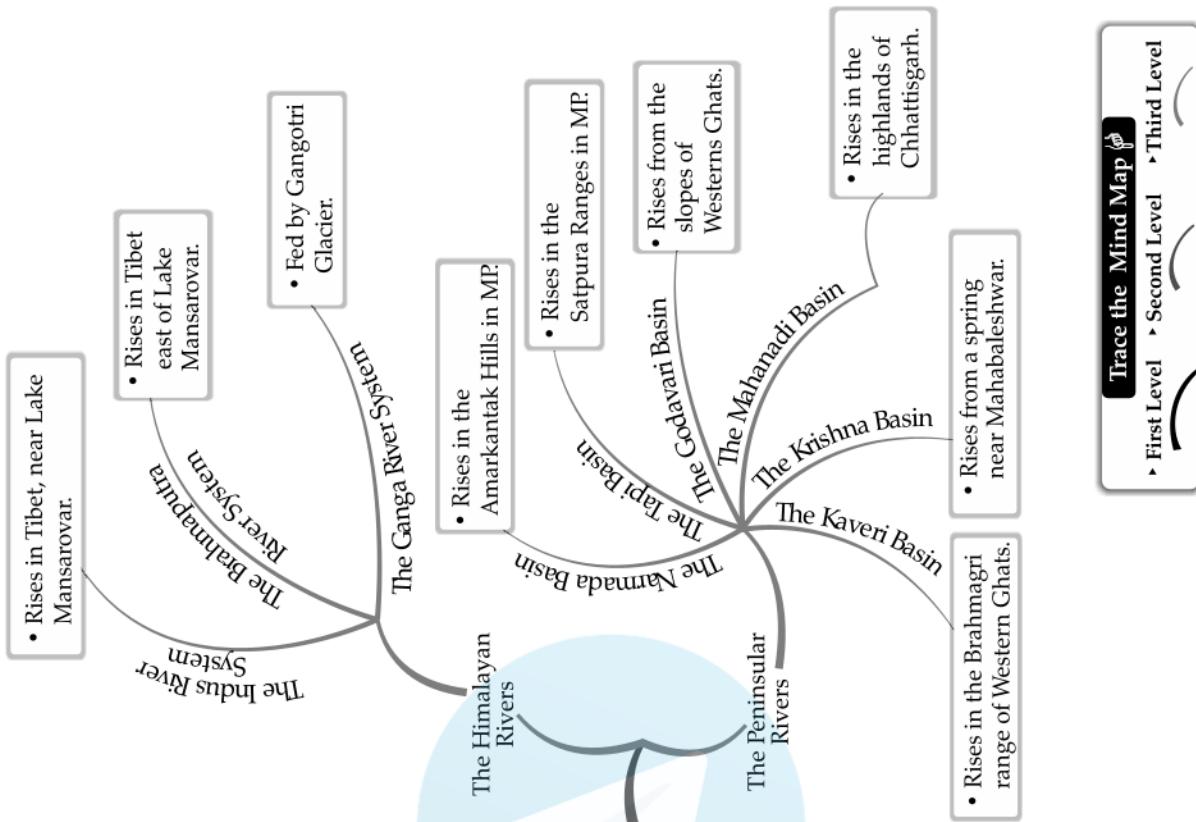
- The major Himalayan rivers include the Indus, the Ganga and the Brahmaputra. These rivers are long and are joined by many large and important tributaries.
- A river along with its tributaries is called a River System.

## The Indus River System

- The river Indus rises in Tibet, near Lake Mansarovar. Flowing west, it enters India in the Ladakh.



NtseBookCorner



## DRAINAGE

- The river has several tributaries such as the Zaskar, Nubra, Shyok and Hunza.
- The Indus flows southwards, eventually reaching the Arabian Sea.
- With a total length of 2,900 kms, the Indus is one of the longest rivers of the world.
- According to the regulations of the Indus Water Treaty (1960), India can use only 20 per cent of the total water carried by Indus River System.

### **The Ganga River System**

- The headwaters of the Ganga, called the Bhagirathi, is fed by the Gangotri Glacier and joined by the Alaknanda at Devaprayag in Uttarakhand.
- The Ganga is joined by many tributaries from the Himalayas, such as the Yamuna, the Ghaghara, the Gandak and the Kosi.
- The main tributaries, which come from the peninsular uplands, are the Chambal, the Betwa and the Son.
- The river bifurcates in West Bengal and the Bhagirathi – Hooghly flows southwards through the Deltaic Plains into the Bay of Bengal.
- The Delta formed by the Ganga and the Brahmaputra rivers is known as the Sundarban Delta.
- The Sunderban Delta is the world's largest and fastest growing delta. It is also the home of the Royal Bengal Tiger.
- The length of the river Ganga is over 2,500 kms.

### **The Brahmaputra River System**

- The Brahmaputra rises in Tibet, East of Mansarovar Lake, very close to the sources of the Indus and the Satluj.
- Brahmaputra is known as the Tsang Po in Tibet and Jamuna in Bangladesh.
- The Brahmaputra has a braided channel in its entire length in Assam and forms many Riverine Islands.
- Every year, during the rainy season, the river overflows its banks, causing widespread devastation due to floods in Assam and Bangladesh.

### **The Peninsular Rivers**

- The main water divide in Peninsular India is formed by the Western Ghats, which runs from North to South, close to the Western Coast.
- Major rivers of the peninsula are the Narmada and the Tapi, Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri.
- The Narmada and the Tapi are the only long rivers, which flow westward and make estuaries. The rest flow eastwards and drain into the Bay of Bengal. These rivers make deltas at their mouths.

### **The Narmada Basin**

- The Narmada rises in the Amarkantak Hills in Madhya Pradesh.
- The Marble Rocks, near Jabalpur, where the Narmada flows through a deep gorge, and the Dhuadhar Falls, where the river plunges over steep rocks, are some of the notable locations along the Narmada River.
- The Narmada basin covers parts of Madhya Pradesh and Gujarat.

### **The Tapi Basin**

- The Tapi rises in the Satpura ranges, in the Betul district of Madhya Pradesh.
- Its basin covers parts of Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat and Maharashtra.

### **The Godavari Basin**

- The Godavari is the largest Peninsular River.
- It rises from the slopes of the Western Ghats in the Nasik District of Maharashtra. Its length is about 1,500 km.
- The drainage basin of the Godavari River is the largest among the Peninsular rivers.
- Important tributaries of the Godavari are the Purna, Wardha, Pranhita, Manjra, Wainganga and Penganga.
- The Godavari River is also known as the 'Dakshin Ganga' because of its length and the area it covers.

Scan to know more about this topic



The Himalayan Rivers

### **The Mahanadi Basin**

- The Mahanadi rises in the highlands of Chhattisgarh.
- It flows through Odisha to reach the Bay of Bengal.

### **The Krishna Basin**

- Rising from a spring near Mahabaleshwar, the Krishna flows for about 1,400 km and reaches the Bay of Bengal.
- Tungabhadra, Koyana, Ghatprabha, Musi and Bhima are some of its tributaries.



### The Kaveri Basin

- The Kaveri rises in the Brahmagiri range of the Western Ghats and it reaches the Bay of Bengal.
- The main tributaries are the Amravati, the Bhavani, the Hemavati and the Kabini.
- Its basin drains parts of Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu.
- The River Kaveri makes the second biggest waterfall in India, known as Shivasamudram falls.

## Lakes

### Lakes

- Lake is a large area of water surrounded by land. Lakes of large extent are called the Seas, like the Caspian, the Dead and the Aral Sea.
- India has many lakes. These differ from each other in the size and other characteristics. Most lakes are permanent, while others contain water only during the rainy season.
- Lakes are formed by the following processes: the action of glaciers and ice sheets, by wind, river action and human activities.
- Most of the freshwater lakes are in the Himalayan region. They are of glacial origin.
- The Wular Lake in Jammu and Kashmir is the largest freshwater lake in India.
- Apart from Natural lakes, the damming of the rivers for the generation of Hydel Power has also led to the formation of lakes such as Guru Gobind Sagar Lake (Bakra Nangal Project).
- **Importance of lakes:**
  - A lake helps to regulate the flow of a river.
  - During heavy rainfall, it prevents flooding, and during the dry season, it helps to maintain an even flow of water.
  - Lakes can also be used for developing Hydel Power.
  - They moderate the climate of the surroundings; maintain the Aquatic Ecosystem, enhance natural beauty, help develop Tourism and provide Recreation.

## Role of Rivers in the Economy and River Pollution

### Role of Rivers in the Economy

- Rivers are of great value to human beings :
  - Rivers have been of fundamental importance throughout the human history.
  - Water from the rivers is a basic natural resource, essential for various human activities.
  - The river banks have attracted settlers from ancient times. These settlements have now become big cities.
  - Using rivers for Irrigation, Navigation, Hydro-Power Generation is of special significance – particularly to a country like India, where Agriculture is the major source of livelihood of the majority of its population.

### River Pollution

- The growing Domestic, Municipal, Industrial and Agricultural demand for water from rivers naturally affects the quality of water.
- The increasing Urbanisation and Industrialisation are responsible for the rising pollution level of many rivers.
- Concern over rising pollution in our rivers led to the launching of various action plans to clean the rivers.

## Know the Terms

- **Basin :** A part of the Earth's surface consisting of rock strata that slopes down to a common centre.
- **Drainage Basin :** The area drained by a single River System is called a Drainage Basin.
- **Water Divide :** Any elevated area, such as a mountain or an upland, separating two drainage basins is known as a Water Divide.
- **Perennial :** It is a stream or river that exhibits continuous flow of water throughout the year.
- **Dendritic :** The stream with its tributaries which resembles the branches of a tree. Thus, the name Dendritic.

## DRAINAGE

- **Trellis** : A river joined by its tributaries, at approximately right angles, develops a Trellis pattern.
- **Rectangular** : A drainage pattern that develops on a strongly joint rocky terrain.
- **Radial** : The Radial pattern develops when streams flow in different directions from a central peak or dome-like structure.
- **River System** : A River System is a way of defining the larger networks of streams, lakes and rivers that are part of a larger river's network of tributaries and distributaries.
- **Indus Water Treaty** : According to the Provisions of this Treaty (signed in 1960), India can use only 20 per cent of the total water carried by the Indus River System.
- **Distributary** : A stream or small river that splits off from a larger river and flows in a different direction.
- **Sunderban Delta** : The World's largest and fastest growing delta. It is also the home of the Royal Bengal Tiger.
- **Peninsula** : A large area bounded by the sea on three sides.
- **Delta** : A piece of land shaped like a triangle that is formed when a river splits into smaller rivers before it flows into an ocean.
- **Tributary** : A river or stream that flows into a larger river or lake.
- **Estuary** : The tidal mouth of a large river, where the tide meets the stream.
- **Ox-bow lake** : It is a U-shaped water body formed when a meandering river is cut off from the mainstream.
- **Lagoon** : When the lake is formed by spits and bars in coastal areas, it is called a lagoon.
- **Glacial lake** : A lake formed by melting of the glacier is called a Glacial lake.
- **Irrigation** : Supply of water for agriculture purpose from canals, wells and tanks artificially or manually.
- **Navigation** : Travel or traffic by vessels, especially commercial shipping.
- **Hydro-power** : Power derived from running or falling water.
- **River pollution** : It is a form of water pollution which occurs due to the direct or indirect discharge of pollutants into the river.
- **Urbanisation** : The process by which towns and cities are formed and become larger, as more and more people begin living and working in central areas.
- **Industrialisation** : The development of industries in a country or region on a wide scale.

**(A) OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS****1 Mark Each****Stand Alone MCQs****Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

- Q1** 1. Which of these is a characteristic feature of Peninsular rivers?
- All the rivers are seasonal.
  - All rivers flow throughout the year.
  - Rivers originate only from southern part of India.
  - All these rivers form deltas.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Apart from natural lakes, the damming of the rivers for the generation of hydel power has also led to the formation of Lakes such as Guru Gobind Sagar (Bhakra Nangal Project).

- Q2** 4. Which one of the following is the longest river of the Peninsular India?
- Narmada
  - Godavari
  - Krishna
  - Kaveri

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Godavari is the largest Peninsular river. It rises from the slopes of the Western Ghats in the Nasik district of Maharashtra. Its length is about 1500 km. It drains into the Bay of Bengal.

- Q3** 2. Trellis Drainage pattern is made by which river?
- Narmada
  - Satluj
  - Beas
  - Kaveri

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

- Q4** 5. Zaskar and Nubra are important tributaries of which river?
- Satluj
  - Indus
  - Ganga
  - Ravi

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

- Q5** 3. Give an example of a man-made lake.
- Wular
  - Samba
  - Guru Gobind Sagar Lake
  - Dal



**Explanation:** The river Indus rises in Tibet, near Lake Mansarovar. Flowing west, it enters India in Ladakh. It forms a picturesque gorge in this part. Several tributaries, the Zaskar, the Nubra, the Shyok, and the Hunza, join it in the Kashmir region.

**6. Which is the largest salt water lake in India?**

- (A) Dal Lake
- (B) Chilika Lake
- (C) Bhimtal lake
- (D) Wular lake

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Chilika Lake is the largest salt water in terms of volume of water.

**7. What is the area drained by a single river system called?**

- (A) Drainage
- (B) Drainage basin
- (C) Water divide
- (D) None of these

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** A river basin or drainage basin is an area of land drained by a river and its tributaries. The edge of the drainage basin is known as the watershed.

**8. Which river has the world's largest drainage basin?**

- (A) Ganga
- (B) Indus
- (C) Thames
- (D) Amazon

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Amazon Basin, in northern South America, is the largest in the world.

**9. What is the world's largest and fastest growing delta called?**

- (A) Sunderban River Delta
- (B) Kaveri River Delta
- (C) Godavari River Delta
- (D) Krishna River Delta

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Sunderban River Delta is the world's largest and fastest growing delta.

**10. Which lake is the result of tectonic activity?**

- (A) Dal lake
- (B) Sambhar lake
- (C) Wular lake
- (D) Nainital lake

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Wular Lake is a large freshwater lake in the Bandipore district in the Indian state of Jammu and Kashmir. The lake basin was formed as a result of tectonic activity and is fed by the Jhelum River.

**11. Which river water is able to dilute and assimilate pollution loads within 20 km of large cities?**

- (A) Ganga river
- (B) Kaveri river
- (C) Godavari river
- (D) Brahmaputra river

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The growing Domestic, Municipal, Industrial, and Agricultural demand for water from rivers naturally affects the quality of water. As a result, more and more water is being drained out of the rivers reducing their volume. On the other hand, a heavy load of untreated sewage and industrial effluents are emptied into the rivers. This affects not only the quality of water but also the self-cleansing capacity of the river. For example, given the adequate streamflow, the Ganga water can dilute and assimilate pollution loads within 20 km of large cities.

**12. Which place in India River Bhagirathi merges with Alaknanda River to form River Ganga?**

- (A) Joshimath
- (B) Devprayag
- (C) Allahabad
- (D) Vishnuprayag

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The headwaters of the Ganga called the 'Bhagirathi' is fed by the Gangotri Glacier and joined by the Alaknanda at Devaprayag in Uttarakhand. At Haridwar, the Ganga emerges from the mountains onto the plains.

**13. Which of the following rivers are the major tributaries of River Kaveri?**

- (A) Koyna, Tungabhadra, and Bhima
- (B) Penganga, Indravati, Pranhita, and Manjra
- (C) Subansiri, Kameng, Manas, and Sankosh.
- (D) Kabini, Bhavani, and Amravati

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Kaveri rises in the Brahmagiri range of the Western Ghats, and it reaches the Bay of Bengal in the south of Cuddalore, in Tamil Nadu. Its main tributaries are Amravati, Bhavani, Hemavati, and Kabini.

**14. The River that forms Dhuandhar waterfall and a picturesque gorge of marble rocks nearby Jabalpur:**

- (A) Narmada
- (B) Kaveri
- (C) Kabini
- (D) Bhavani

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Narmada rises in the Amarkantak hills in Madhya Pradesh. It flows towards the west in a rift valley formed due to faulting. On its way to the sea, the Narmada creates many picturesque locations. The 'Marble rocks', near Jabalpur where the Narmada flows through a deep gorge, and the 'Dhuadhar falls' where the river plunges over steep rocks, are some of the notable ones.

**15. Which of the following rivers is known as the 'Dakshin Ganga'?**

- (A) The Godavari
- (B) The Narmada
- (C) The Krishna
- (D) The Kaveri

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Godavari river is known as the 'Dakshin Ganga'.



### Assertion and Reason Based MCQs

**Directions :** In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as :

- (A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

**1. Assertion (A) :** The Ganga is joined by many tributaries from the Himalayas, a few of them being major rivers, such as the Yamuna, the Ghaghara, the Gandak and the Kosi.

**Reason(R) :** The Ghaghara, the Gandak and the Kosi rise in the Nepal Himalaya.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Ganga is joined by many tributaries from the Himalayas, a few of them being major rivers such as the Yamuna, the Ghaghara, the Gandak and the Kosi. The river Yamuna rises from the Yamunotri Glacier in the Himalayas. It flows parallel to the Ganga and as a right bank tributary, meets the Ganga at Allahabad. The Ghaghara, the Gandak and the Kosi rise in the Nepal Himalaya.

**2. Assertion (A) :** Most of the Himalayan rivers are perennial.

**Reason (R) :** They have water throughout the year. These rivers receive water from rain as well as from melted snow from the lofty mountains.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Perennial is a stream or river that exhibits continuous flow of water throughout the year. Most of the Himalayan rivers are perennial. They have water throughout the year. These rivers receive water from rain as well as from melted snow from the lofty mountains.

**3. Assertion (A) :** According to the regulations of the Indus Water Treaty (1960), India can use only 50 per cent of the total water carried by Indus River System.

**Reason (R) :** This water is used for irrigation in the Punjab, Haryana and the southern and western parts of Rajasthan.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** According to the regulations of the Indus Water Treaty (1960), India can use only 20 per cent of the total water carried by Indus river system. This water is used for irrigation in the Punjab, Haryana and the southern and western parts of Rajasthan.

**4. Assertion (A) :** Every year during the Rainy season, the Brahmaputra river overflows its banks, causing

widespread devastation due to floods in Assam and Bangladesh.

**Reason (R) :** In India it passes through a region of high rainfall. Here the river carries a large volume of water and considerable amount of silt.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** In India it passes through a region of high rainfall. Here the river carries a large volume of water and considerable amount of silt. Unlike other north Indian rivers the Brahmaputra is marked by huge deposits of silt on its bed causing the river bed to rise. The river also shifts its channel frequently.

**5. Assertion (A) :** Lakes are of great value to human beings.

**Reason (R) :** Lakes enhance natural beauty, help develop tourism and provide recreation.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** During heavy rainfall, lakes prevent flooding and during the dry season, it helps to maintain an even flow of water. Lakes can also be used for developing Hydel Power. They moderate the climate of the surroundings; maintain the Aquatic Ecosystem, enhance natural beauty, help develop Tourism and provide recreation.

**6. Assertion (A) :** More and more water is being drained out of the rivers reducing their volume.

**Reason (R) :** The growing Domestic, Municipal, Industrial and Agricultural demand for water from rivers naturally affects the quality of water.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The growing Domestic, Municipal, Industrial and Agricultural demand for water from rivers naturally affects the quality of water. As a result, more and more water is being drained out of the rivers reducing their volume. On the other hand, a heavy load of untreated sewage and industrial effluents are emptied into the rivers. This affects not only the quality of water but also the self-cleansing capacity of the river.



### Case-based MCQs

I. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow :

#### The Indus River System

The river Indus rises in Tibet, near Lake Mansarovar. Flowing west, it enters India in the Ladakh. It forms a picturesque gorge in this part. Several tributaries, the Zaskar, the Nubra, the Shyok and the Hunza, join it in the Kashmir region. The Indus flows through Baltistan and Gilgit and emerges from the mountains at Attock. The Satluj, the Beas, the Ravi, the Chenab and the Jhelum join together to enter



the Indus near Mithankot in Pakistan. Beyond this, the Indus flows southwards eventually reaching the Arabian Sea, east of Karachi. The Indus plain has a very gentle slope. With a total length of 2900 kms, the Indus is one of the longest rivers of the world. A little over a third of the Indus basin is located in India: Ladakh, Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh and Punjab and the rest is in Pakistan.

The following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

**1. Where does the river Indus rise?**

- (A) Bangladesh      (B) Nepal  
(C) Tibet            (D) China

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

**2. Where does it form a picturesque gorge?**

- (A) Ladakh           (B) Jammu & Kashmir  
(C) Nepal           (D) Karachi

Ans. Option (A) is correct.

**Explanation:** Flowing west, it enters India in the Ladakh. It forms a picturesque gorge in this part.

**3. The Indus plain has a very \_\_\_\_ slope.**

- (A) smooth          (B) gentle  
(C) rough           (D) harsh

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

**Explanation:** The Indus plain has a very gentle slope. With a total length of 2900 kms, the Indus is one of the longest rivers of the world.

**4. Indus is \_\_\_\_ long in length.**

- (A) 2,400 km       (B) 2,900 km  
(C) 2,500 km       (D) 2,700 km

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

**Explanation:** With a total length of 2900 kms, the Indus is one of the longest rivers of the world.

**II. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow :**

The main water divide in Peninsular India is formed by the Western Ghats, which runs from north to south close to the western coast. Most of the major rivers of the Peninsula, such as the Mahanadi, the Godavari, the Krishna and the Kaveri flow eastwards and drain into the Bay of Bengal. These rivers make deltas at their mouths. There are numerous small streams flowing west of the Western Ghats. The Narmada and the Tapi are the only long rivers, which flow west and make estuaries. The drainage basins of the peninsular rivers are comparatively smaller in size.

**Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:**

**1. The main water divide in Peninsular India is formed by the Western Ghats, which runs from \_\_\_\_ close to the Western Coast.**

- (A) South to East    (B) North to South  
(C) East to West    (D) North to West

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

**Explanation:** The main water divide in Peninsular India is formed by the Western Ghats, which runs from north to south close to the western coast.

**2. The major rivers of the peninsula flow**

- (A) Westwards      (B) Southwards  
(C) Eastwards      (D) Northwards

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

**Explanation:** Most of the major rivers of the Peninsula, such as the Mahanadi, the Godavari, the Krishna and the Kaveri flow eastwards and drain into the Bay of Bengal.

**3. These rivers make deltas at their \_\_\_\_ .**

- (A) source           (B) mouth  
(C) banks           (D) None of the above.

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

**Explanation:** These rivers make deltas at their mouths.

**4. The \_\_\_\_ are the only long rivers, which flow West and make estuaries.**

- (A) Narmada and Tapi  
(B) Krishna and Kaveri  
(C) Ganga and Yamuna  
(D) Mahanadi and Kaveri

Ans. Option (A) is correct.

**Explanation:** The Narmada and the Tapi are the only long rivers, which flow west and make estuaries.

**III. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow :**

India has many lakes. These differ from each other in size and other characteristics. Most lakes are permanent; some contain water only during the Rainy season, like the lakes in the basins of inland drainage of semi-arid regions. There are some lakes which are the result of the action of glaciers and ice sheets, while others have been formed by wind, river action and human activities.

A meandering river across a floodplain forms cut-offs that later develops into ox-bow lakes. Spits and bars form lagoons in the coastal areas, e.g., the Chilika lake, the Pulicat lake and the Kolleru lake. Lakes in the region of inland drainage are sometimes seasonal; for example, the Sambhar lake in Rajasthan, which is a salt water lake. Its water is used for producing salt.

Most of the freshwater lakes are in the Himalayan region. They are of glacial origin.

In other words, they formed when glaciers dug out a basin, which was later filled with snowmelt. The Wular lake in Jammu and Kashmir, in contrast, is the result of tectonic activity. It is the largest freshwater lake in India. The Dal lake, Bhimtal, Nainital,

## DRAINAGE

Loktak and Barapani are some other important freshwater lakes.

**Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:**

1. The Indian lakes differ from each other in \_\_\_\_\_ and other :

- (A) size, characteristics
- (B) length, features
- (C) depth, characteristics
- (D) location, features

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** India has many lakes. These differ from each other in size and other characteristics.

2. Sambhar lake is in

- (A) Uttar Pradesh
- (B) Uttarakhand
- (C) West Bengal
- (D) Rajasthan

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Sambhar lake in Rajasthan, which is a salt water lake. Its water is used for producing salt.

3. Salt is produced from

- (A) fresh water lake
- (B) salt water lake
- (C) man-made lake
- (D) ocean

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

4. \_\_\_\_\_ is the largest fresh water lake in India.

- (A) The Dal lake
- (B) The Nainital lake
- (C) The Walur lake
- (D) The Sambhar lake

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Wular lake in Jammu and Kashmir, in contrast, is the result of tectonic activity. It is the largest freshwater lake in India.



## (B) SUBJECTIVE QUESTIONS



### Short Answer Type Questions

(3 Marks Each)

Q. 1. Which river is known as the Dakshin Ganga? State any two characteristics of it. [R]

[Board Term I, 2016, 2013]

OR

Why is the Godavari River also known as 'Dakshin Ganga'? [Board Term I, 2015]

**Ans.** The Godavari.

**Characteristics are:**

- (i) It rises from the slopes of the Western Ghats in Nashik District of Maharashtra.
- (ii) Length is about 1,500 km.
- (iii) The basin covers Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Odisha and Andhra Pradesh.
- (iv) Tributaries are the Purna, the Wardha, the Pranhita, the Manjra, the Wainganga and the Penganga. (Any two)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]  
(1+2=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students forgot to write actual length of river and name of the states covered.

#### Answering Tip

- Dakshin implies to South and Godavari River is the longest river of South.

Q. 2. Describe any three important features of the Mahanadi Basin. [R] [Board Term I, 2016]

**Ans.** (i) The Mahanadi rises in Chhattisgarh.

(ii) It flows through Odisha, for 860 km till it falls into the Bay of Bengal.

(iii) Its basin is shared by Maharashtra, Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand and Odisha. (1 × 3 = 3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

Q. 3. Differentiate between the Narmada and Tapi Basin. [U] [Board Term I, 2016, 2014]

S. No.	Narmada Basin	Tapi Basin
(i)	Narmada River originates from the Amarkantak Hills.	The Tapi River originates from Satpura Ranges (in Betul district).
(ii)	It is very long and it flows towards West and joins Arabian Sea.	It is very short in length as compared to the Narmada River.
(iii)	It covers part of Madhya Pradesh and Gujarat.	It covers parts of Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat and Maharashtra.

(1×3=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students mostly define basin and give examples of tributaries of the two rivers.

#### Answering Tip

- Discuss the rivers and the regions covered by them.

Q. 4. Distinguish between a Delta and an Estuary. [U] [Board Term I, 2016]

**Ans.**



S. No.	Delta	Estuary
(i)	These are triangular deposits made by rivers at their mouth.	These are sharp-edged mouths of rivers without any deposits.
(ii)	They are formed in regions of low tides.	They are formed in regions of high tides and rift valleys.
(iii)	These are agriculturally fertile lands.	They are agriculturally not so fertile.

(1 × 3 = 3)

**Q. 5. Why does river Brahmaputra has less silt in Tibet than India? Name the state where it forms Riverine Island.** [Board Term I, 2016]

**Ans.** Brahmaputra has less silt in Tibet, as it is a cold and dry area. In India, the river carries a large volume of water and considerable silt because it passes through a region of heavy rainfall.

The Brahmaputra has a braided channel in its entire length in Assam and forms many Riverine Islands there.  $(1\frac{1}{2}+1\frac{1}{2}=3)$

**Q. 6. Describe any three important features of the Ganga River System.** [Board Term I, 2016]

- (i) Headwaters of the Ganga (called Bhagirathi) is born from Gangotri Glacier and is joined by Alaknanda at Devprayag.
- (ii) The Ganga is joined by a large number of tributaries from East and West.
- (iii) It drains into the Bay of Bengal after joining the Brahmaputra and through its distributaries.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]  $1 \times 3 = 3$ 

**Q. 7. How do the Himalayan rivers perform erosional activities and form depositional features?** [Board Term I, 2016]

- (i) In the upper course, rivers flow with great speed from higher to lower levels. They cause erosion.
- (ii) In the middle and the lower course, they carry lots of sediment like silt and sand. So, the speed slows down.
- (iii) Besides, absence of slope in the lower course causes deposition and formation of various features.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]  $1 \times 3 = 3$ 

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students usually writes about causes of soil erosion.

#### Answering Tip

- Since, the flow of the river from mountain to plains is of the great speed, so it causes erosion.

**Q. 8. What do you understand by Drainage Pattern?**

Name any four Drainage Patterns formed by the rivers.

[R [Board Term I, 2013 2015]

OR

What is a river pattern? Name any four drainage patterns formed by the river.

[Board Term I, 2012]

**Ans.** Drainage Pattern also known as river pattern, are the patterns formed by the streams, rivers and lakes in a particular drainage basin.

They are governed by the topography of the land, whether a particular region is dominated by hard or soft rocks and the gradient of the land.

The stream within a drainage basin forms certain patterns depending on the slope of land, underlying rock structure as well as the climatic conditions of the area.

Four patterns formed by rivers are :

- (i) Dendritic pattern
- (ii) Trellis pattern
- (iii) Radial pattern
- (iv) Rectangular pattern.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015]  $1+2=3$ 

**Q. 9. Explain the term 'Water Divide' with example. What is its significance?** [Board Term I, 2015]

[NCERT]

**Ans.** Any elevated area such as a mountain or an upland that separates two drainage basins is known as water divide.

The Western Ghats is a water divide of peninsular rivers.

Significance of water divide is that it helps us identify two different Drainage Patterns.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015]

 $(1+1+1=3)$ 

**Q. 10. Why are Peninsular Rivers seasonal in nature? State any three reasons.** [Board Term I, DDE 2014]

**Ans.(i)** The peninsular rivers are rain-fed rivers and depend only on rain water. These rivers do not get continuous water supply from glaciers. Hence, most of the rivers dry up in hot summer season.

**(ii)** These rivers have small basins and catchment areas. This is also the reason that the peninsular rivers are seasonal in nature.

**(iii)** The peninsular rivers lie in medium to low rainfall regions as compared to Himalayan Rivers, so they



## DRAINAGE

receive less rain water in the Monsoon season. That is why they are seasonal in nature.  $(1 \times 3 = 3)$

**Q. 11.** Differentiate between the West and East flowing Peninsular Rivers.

[U] [Board Term I, DDE-2014]  
OR

Compare the East-flowing and West-flowing rivers of the Peninsular Plateau. [NCERT]

**Ans.**

S. No.	East-flowing Rivers	West-flowing Rivers
(i)	East flowing rivers are : Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri.	West flowing rivers are: Narmada, Luni, Ghaggar and Tapi.
(ii)	They drain into the Bay of Bengal.	They originate in the central part and drain into the Arabian Sea.
(iii)	They are numerous in number and form deltas at their mouth.	They are numerous in number and form estuaries at their mouth.
(iv)	They have numerous tributaries.	They are devoid of any remarkable tributary.

(Any three)  $(1 \times 3 = 3)$

**Q. 12.** Differentiate between the Ganga and the Godavari River System. [U]

[Board Term I, 2014]

S. No.	Ganga River System	Godavari River System
(i)	It is a Himalayan-river.	It is a Peninsular river.
(ii)	At Haridwar, the Ganga emerges from the mountains onto the plains.	It rises from the slopes of the Western Ghats in Nasik district of Maharashtra.
(iii)	The length of the Ganga River System is over 2,500 km.	Its length is 1,500 km.
(iv)	Its tributaries are: Ghaghara, Kosi, Gandak, Son, Betwa, Chambal, etc.	Its tributaries are: Purna, Wardha, Pranhita, etc.

(Any three)  $(1 \times 3 = 3)$

**Q. 13.** Where does the Narmada River originate from? Name any two picturesque locations formed by it.

[R] [Board Term I, 2014, 2013]

**Ans.** The Narmada River originates from the Amarkantak Hills in Madhya Pradesh. It flows towards the West in a rift valley formed due to faulting.

Picturesque locations are :

- (i) The Marble Rocks near Jabalpur where the Narmada flows through a deep gorge.

(ii) The Dhuadhar Falls, where the river plunges over steep rocks. [CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013]

$(1 + 2 = 3)$

**Q. 14.** Define a River System and describe two characteristics of river Indus. [U]

[Board Term I, 2012]

**Ans.** A river along with its tributaries is called a River System.

**Characteristics :**

- (i) River Indus rises in Tibet near Mansarovar Lake.
- (ii) Its total length is 2,900 km and is one of the longest rivers of the world.
- (iii) Majority of it flows through Pakistan and assists in agricultural activities.
- (iv) The main tributaries of Indus are the Nubra, Hunza, Satluj, Beas, Ravi, Chenab and Jhelum.

(Any two)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012]  $(1+2=3)$

#### Commonly Made Error

- Student forgot to mention the river's contribution in Pakistan.

#### Answering Tip

- Discuss the origin of the river, and its tributaries along with the places it flows through.

**Q. 15.** Describe any three features of the Himalayan Rivers. [U] [Board Term I, 2012]

**Ans. Features :**

- (i) These are perennial.
- (ii) Have long courses from their source to the sea.
- (iii) Perform intensive erosion activity in their upper course and carry huge load of silt and sand.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012]  $(1 \times 3 = 3)$

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students mention only the origin and the places it flows through.

#### Answering Tip

- Since, the river has its origin in the snow-capped mountains, it is perennial and is responsible for erosion.

**Q. 16.** Explain any three main features of the Brahmaputra River System. [Board Term I, 2012]

**Ans. Characteristics of the Brahmaputra River System:**

- (i) The Brahmaputra rises in Tibet, flows Eastwards parallel to the Himalayas and enters India in the state of Arunachal Pradesh.
- (ii) At this point, it is joined by Dibang and Lohit.



- (iii) In Tibet, it carries a smaller volume of water and less silt, but in India, it carries a large volume of water and a considerable amount of silt.
  - (iv) It has a braided channel in Assam and forms many Riverine Islands.
  - (v) It is marked by huge deposits of silt on its bed.
- (Any three)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012] (1×3=3)

- Q. 17.** In which state of India, river Brahmaputra has a braided channel in its entire length? Why does this river carry a large volume of water and silt in India compared to Tibet? [Board Term I, 2012]

**Ans.** The Brahmaputra has a braided channel in its entire length in the state of Assam.

This river carries a larger volume of water and silt in India, as here, it passes through a region of high rainfall, whereas, in Tibet, the river carries a smaller volume of water and less silt, as it is a cold and dry area.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012] (1+2=3)

- Q. 18.** Describe any three features of peninsular rivers. [Board Term I, 2012]

**Ans. Features Peninsular Rivers :**

- (i) Most of the Peninsular rivers drain into the Bay of Bengal.
- (ii) These rivers make deltas at their mouth.
- (iii) The Narmada and Tapi are the only rivers which make estuaries.
- (iv) Drainage basin is comparatively small.

(Any three)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012] 1 × 3 = 3

- Q. 19.** Name the two head streams of the Ganga. Where do they meet to form the Ganga? [NCERT]

**Ans.** Alaknanda and Bhagirathi are the two head streams of Ganga. They join at Devprayag in Uttarakhand. At Haridwar, the Ganga emerges from the mountains on to the plains.

- Q. 20. How are Man-made lakes created? For what purpose are they used? Give an example.** [Board Term I, 2015]

**Ans. Causes of creating Man-made lakes:**

- (i) Man-made lakes are created for Hydro-electric Power Supply, Recreational purposes, Industrial use, Agricultural use or Domestic Water Supply.
- (ii) Lakes are formed by stopping the natural flow of a river by constructing dams resulting into collection of water on one side.

The Guru Gobind Sagar Lake is an example of Man-made lake. [CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015]

(2+1=3)

- Q. 21.** Lakes are of great value to human beings. Explain the statement with three examples. [Board Term I, 2015]

**OR**

How can you develop lakes as a source of employment? [Board Term I, DDE-2014]

**OR**

State three economic benefits of lakes.

[Board Term I, 2013, 2012]

[NCERT]

**Ans. Importance of Lakes :**

- (i) Help to regulate the flow of a river.
- (ii) Prevent flooding.
- (iii) They help to maintain even flow of water during dry season.
- (iv) They can be used to develop Hydel Power.
- (v) Moderate the climate of surroundings.
- (vi) Maintain the Aquatic Ecosystem.
- (vii) Help to Develop Tourism and provide Recreation Facilities.
- (viii) Can be used in Irrigation and other Agricultural Activities.

(Any three)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] (1×3=3)

- Q. 22.** How does a Man-made lake help a river to regulate its flow? [Board Term I, 2014]

**Ans.** Man-made lakes are generally created by construction of dams. The Reservoirs thus created help to control the flow of the rivers. They help in regulating the flow of water to be released to downstream regions as per the requirement. In this manner, they also help in the prevention of flooding.

- Q. 23.** What is self-cleansing capacity of a river? How does it get affected by pollution? [Board Term I, 2016]

**Ans. (i)** A fast-flowing river with lots of volume of water can dilute pollution load. This is known as the self-cleansing capacity of the river.

- (ii) Pollution slows the speed of rivers affecting self cleansing capacity of the river.
- (iii) Pollution increases the volume of load in the river. [CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1 × 3 = 3)

- Q. 24.** Why is pollution rate of Ganga River increasing day by day? [Board Term I, 2016]

## DRAINAGE

**Ans.** The pollution rate of Ganga River is increasing because:

- Heavy load of Untreated sewage and Industrial effluents is being emptied into the Ganga.
- Increasing Urbanization has raised the pollution level of the river.
- Domestic, Municipal, Industrial and Agricultural wastage are emptied into the river.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1 × 3 = 3)

**Q.** 25. "Rivers have been of fundamental importance throughout the human history." Justify this statement in three points. U

[Board Term I, 2015, 2012]

**Ans.** Rivers have been of fundamental importance throughout the human history :

- Water is a basic natural resource, essential for various human activities.
- Therefore, river banks attracted settlers since ancient times. These settlements have now become big cities.
- Use of rivers has been taking place for Irrigation, Navigation, Hydro-Power Generation and Trade since ages.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] (1×3=3)

**Q.** 26. What is meant by Drainage? Explain any four benefits of river. U [Term I, DDE 2014]

OR

State some economic benefits of rivers. NCERT

**Ans.** The River System of an area is called Drainage. The area drained by a single river system is called the Drainage Basin.

**Benefits of River:**

- Rivers provide water for survival and growth of all organisms.
- Rivers provided ideal conditions for the early man to lead a settled life.
- Rivers have built flood plains, deltas and provide fertile soil for agriculture.
- Water from rivers is used for Drinking, Irrigation and for Generating Hydro-Electricity.
- Man is able to supplement his food supply with the fish in the rivers. Rivers also serve as natural waterways.
- The World's earliest civilizations developed in the river valleys, e.g., The Nile Valley Civilization, The Indus Valley Civilization, etc. River valleys are the world's best agricultural lands and are densely populated regions.

(1 + 4 × ½ = 3)

**Answering Tip**

- Mention the major points, rivers has been of importance since ancient times and the major civilizations that developed around the rivers.

**Q.** 27. Explain any three significance of rivers for the economy of a country. U [Board Term I, 2012]

OR

Why are rivers important for the Country's Economy? [NCERT]

**Ans.** Rivers are considered significant for the economy of the country because :

- They provide water for Irrigation.
- They are used for Hydro-Power Generation.
- They are used for Navigation and Tourism.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012] (1 × 3 = 3)

**Q.** 28. Explain any three causes of River Pollution in India. U [Board Term I, 2012]

**Ans.** Three causes of River pollution are:

- Growing Domestic, Municipal, Industrial and Agricultural demand for water affects the quality of water in the rivers.
- A heavy load of Untreated sewers and Industrial effluents further increases river pollution.
- Increasing Urbanization and Industrialization.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012] (1×3=3)

**Commonly Made Error**

- Students mention the basic reasons of pollution.

**Answering Tip**

- Major cause of river pollution deals with Urbanization and Industrialization.

 **Long Answer Type Questions**

(5 Marks Each)

**Q.** 1. From the point of view of agriculture, western Peninsular rivers are less important and moreover these are not navigable. Analyse the reasons behind it. U

[Board Term I, 2016]

**Commonly Made Error**

- Students generally write the common benefits of river.



**Ans.**

- (i) The coastal plains between Western Ghats and Arabian Sea are very narrow. Hence, the coastal rivers are short.
- (ii) The main West flowing rivers are the Sabarmati, Mahi, Bharathapuzha, Periyar, Narmada, Tapi, etc
- (iii) These rivers are not very developed.
- (iv) These rivers flow in troughs.
- (v) Peninsular rivers are not navigable because a large number of these rivers are seasonal. The flow of the Peninsular rivers is dependent upon rainfall and they generally dry up in summer season. River beds are uneven, rocky and have sharp edges. Construction of dams has also made navigation difficult.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1 × 5 = 5)

**AI Q. 2. Describe the Indus River System from origin point to ocean meeting point in brief.** [Board Term I, 2016]**Ans.** The main features of the Indus River System are as given below :

- (i) With a total length of 2,900 kms, the Indus is one of the longest rivers of the world.
- (ii) The Indus originates from a peak nearby the Mansarovar Lake in the Kailash range of Greater Himalayas.
- (iii) It flows down from an altitude of 5,000 m from the sea level.
- (iv) Then it enters the Ladakh where it forms a striking gorge. Several tributaries like Zaskar, Nubra, Shyok and Hunza join it in the Kashmir region.
- (v) The Indus then flows through Baltistan into Gilgit and emerges from the mountains at Attock.
- (vi) The Satluj, Beas, Ravi, Chenab and Jhelum join together to enter the Indus near Mithankot in Pakistan.
- (vii) Eventually it reaches the Arabian Sea, East of Karachi.
- (viii) The Indus Plain has a very gentle slope.

(Any five)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1 × 5 = 5)

**AI Q. 3. Discuss the significant differences between the Himalayan and the Peninsular Rivers.** [Board Term I, 2014] [NCERT]**Ans.**

S. No.	The Himalayan Rivers	The Peninsular Rivers
(i)	The Himalayan Rivers rise in the snow-covered mountains and they flow throughout the year.	The mountains in which the Peninsular Rivers rise are not snow covered. Hence, they dry up in summer.

S. No.	The Himalayan Rivers	The Peninsular Rivers
(ii)	The Himalayan rivers flow in levelled Northern Plains. Therefore, they are quite useful for navigation and irrigation.	The Peninsular rivers flow on uneven rocky surface. Therefore, they are neither navigable nor useful for irrigation.
(iii)	The Himalayan rivers bring with them fertile alluvium which they deposit in the Indo-Gangetic plains.	The Peninsular Rivers do not bring with them enough alluvium. As the current is swift, the deposition activity is negligible.
(iv)	Canals have been dug to use the water of these rivers for irrigation.	As the terrain is rocky and the banks of these rivers are high, canals cannot be dug. However, dams are built to store the flood water for irrigation with the help of small channels.
(v)	Many important towns and centres of trade are situated on the banks of these rivers.	Very few important towns and centres of trade are situated on the banks of these rivers.
(vi)	The porous soil absorbs a lot of water which is later used as ground water by digging wells and tube wells for domestic and irrigation purposes.	The rocky soil does not absorb any water and hence no wells can be dug. All the water flows down the sea at once and at the same time.

(Any five) (1×5=5)

**Q. 4. Define water divide. What are the different patterns of flow made by a river?** [Board Term I, NCT 2014]**OR****Describe the four drainage patterns.**

[Board Term I, 2010]

**Ans.** An elevated area such as a mountain or an upland that separates two drainage basins is called Water Divide.**The four drainage patterns are as follows:**

- (i) **Dendritic:** The dendritic pattern develops where the river channels follow the slope of the terrain. The stream with its tributaries resembles the branches of a tree, thus, the name dendritic.
- (ii) **Trellis:** A river joined by its tributaries, at approximately right angles, develops a trellis pattern. A trellis drainage pattern develops where hard and soft rocks exist parallel to each other.
- (iii) **Rectangular:** A rectangular drainage pattern develops on a strongly jointed rocky terrain.
- (iv) **Radial:** The radial pattern develops when stream flows in different directions from a



## DRAINAGE

central peak or dome-like structure.

(1 + 4 = 5)

**Commonly Made Error**

- The drainage pattern is thought to occur in any style.

**Answering Tip**

- The drainage pattern always occurs in a geometric arrangement.

**Q. 5.** Below are given names of a few lakes of India. Group them under two categories, natural and created by human beings. U [NCERT]

- |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) Wular           | (b) Dal               |
| (c) Nainital        | (d) Bhimtal           |
| (e) Gobind Sagar    | (f) Loktak            |
| (g) Barapani        | (h) Chilika           |
| (i) Sambhar         | (j) Rana Pratap Sagar |
| (k) Nizam Sagar     | (l) Pulicat           |
| (m) Nagarjuna Sagar | (n) Hirakund          |

OR

Make a list of Natural and Artificial lakes with the help of an Atlas. [NCERT]

Ans.	S.No.	Natural Lakes	Man-Made Lakes
	(i)	Wular	Gobind Sagar
	(ii)	Dal	Rana Pratap Sagar
	(iii)	Nainital	Nizam Sagar
	(iv)	Bhimtal	Nagarjuna Sagar
	(v)	Loktak	Hirakund
	(vi)	Barapani	
	(vii)	Chilika	
	(viii)	Sambhar	
	(ix)	Pulicat	

**Q. 6.** The activities of Ganga Action Plan (GAP) Phase – I, initiated in 1985 were declared merge with National River Conservation Plan (NRCP). Why? Write its major achievements. U

[Board Term I, 2015]

**Ans.** The Steering Committee of the National River Conservation Authority reviewed the progress of the GAP and the necessary corrections on the basis of the lessons learnt and experiences gained from GAP phase – I. These have been applied to the major polluted rivers of the country under NRCP due to high pollution level in maximum rivers. The Ganga Action Plan (GAP) Phase – II has been merged with the NRCP. The expanded NCP now covers 152 towns located along 27 Interstate rivers in 16 states. Under this action plan, pollution abatement works are being taken up in 57 towns. **Achievements :** A total of 215 schemes of pollution abatement have been sanctioned. So far, 69 schemes have been completed under this action plan. A million litres of sewage is targeted to be treated.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] 5

**Q. 7.** What is Water Pollution? Describe the main sources of pollution in the river Ganga. U

[Board Term I, 2010]

**Ans.** When any unwanted waste material is added to water which makes it poisonous and useless, it is called as Water Pollution.

**Main sources of pollution in the River Ganga :**

- Industrial effluents.
- Disposal of sewage of Urban Centres.
- Sewage, garbage and liquid waste of households, agricultural lands and factories discharged into the river.
- Disposal of Thermal Power Plants. (1+4=5)

**Q. 8.** Mention the main features of the Ganga Action Plan. U [Board Term I, 2010]

**Ans.** Main features of the Ganga Action Plan :

- Sewage flowing into the river is to be diverted to other locations for treatment and conversion into energy source.
- Steps have been taken to supply safe drinking water by constructing electric crematoriums and separating Bathing Ghats.
- The diversion of several major drains carrying wastes into the river has been completed in cities like Varanasi, Patna and Kanpur and pollution level has been decreased.
- Infrastructure capable of diverting and treating 835 million litres per day of Domestic waste or sewage has been created.
- The Ganga Action Plan has been merged with National River Conservation Plan. It now covers 152 towns located along 27 Interstate rivers in over 16 states. (1×5=5)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2010]



## CHAPTER

## 4

## CLIMATE

## Syllabus

- *Concept*
- *Climatic controls*
- *Factors influencing India's climate*
- *The Indian Monsoon*
- *Distribution of rainfall*
- *Monsoon as a unifying bond*



## Learning Outcomes

- *Identify various factors influencing the climate and explain the climatic variation of our country and its impact on the life of people.*
- *Explain the importance and unifying role of monsoons.*

## Revision Notes

join Us On Telegram  
**Climate of India**

## Concept:

- Weather describes the day-to-day atmospheric conditions such as wind, temperature, cloudiness, moisture, rainfall, etc., affecting a place. The basic elements of weather are wind, temperature, air pressure, precipitation and moisture. Climate is the average weather, usually taken over 30-years period for a particular region and time.
- 'Monsoon' refers to the seasonal reversal in the wind direction during the year. The two important elements of climate are temperature and precipitation.

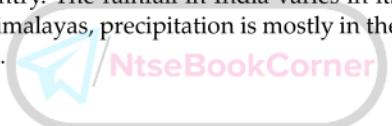
Scan to know more about this topic

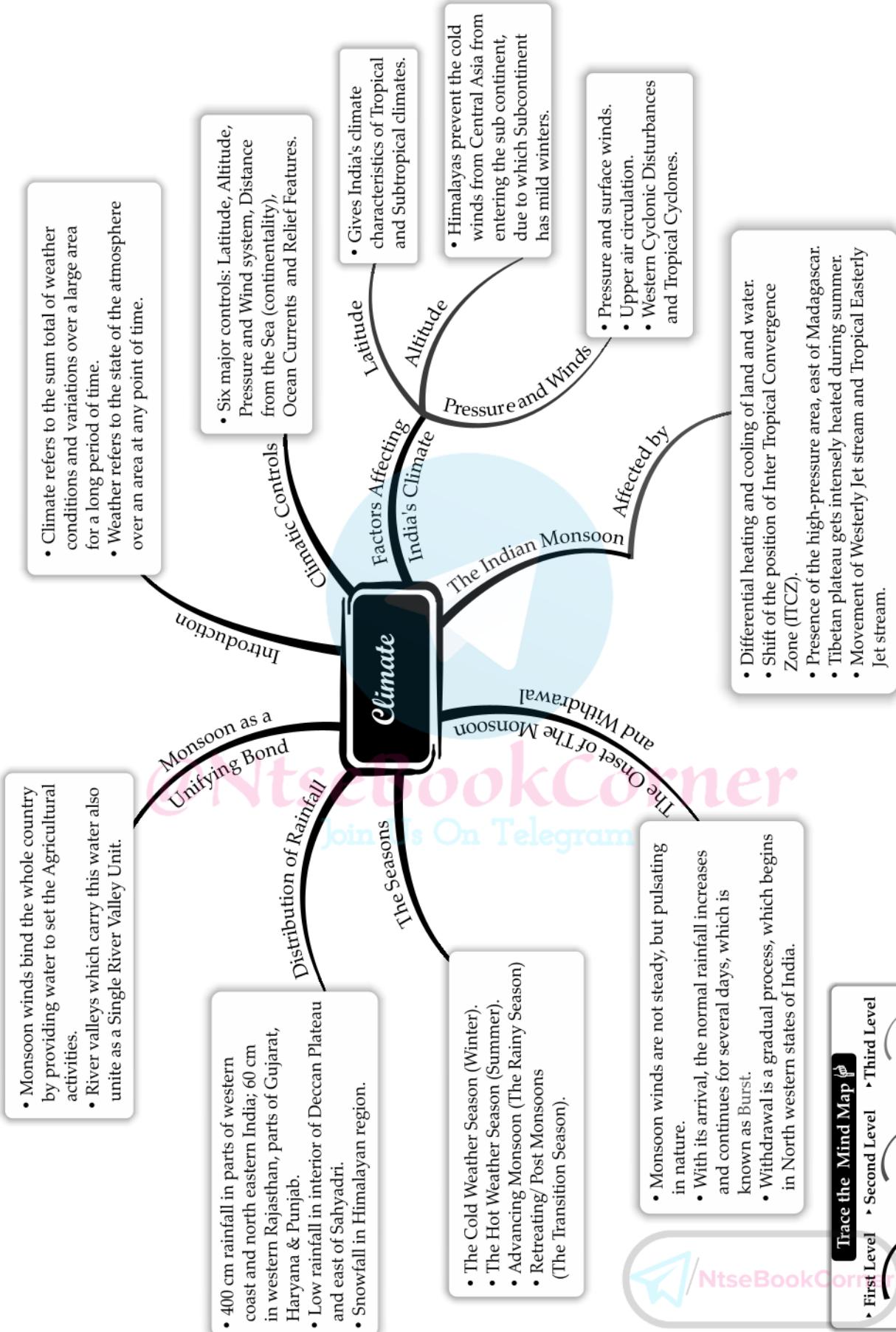


Climate of India

## Indian Climate:

- In some parts of the Rajasthan Desert, the temperature in summers is 50°C, whereas summer temperature in Jammu and Kashmir is 20°C. On a winter night, temperature at Drass in Jammu and Kashmir may be as low as minus 45°C. Thiruvananthapuram, on the other hand, may have a temperature of 22°C. Drass is the second coldest inhabited place in the world.
- In India, the Tropic of Cancer passes through the central part of the country, from the Rann of Kutch in the West to Mizoram in the East. India has both tropical and subtropical types of climate.
- Contrasts in temperature are experienced more in the interior of the country. The rainfall in India varies in its form, types, amount and seasonal distribution. In the upper parts of the Himalayas, precipitation is mostly in the form of snowfall, whereas the remaining parts of the country receive rains.







- The annual precipitation varies from over 400 cm in Meghalaya to less than 10 cm in Ladakh and western Rajasthan. Most parts of the country receive rainfall from June to September. But some parts like the Tamil Nadu coast gets a large portion of its rain during October and November.
- There is a decrease in the rainfall generally from East to West in the Northern Plains. Climatic variations also affect the way people live, i.e., depends on the food, the clothes and the kind of houses they live in.
- In India, the elevation of land ranges from 30 metres to 6,000 metres. The Himalayan mountains to the North of India have an average height of about 6,000 metres. The average summer temperature on the Himalayas can vary from 0°C to 14°C, while winters can see the temperature dipping below freezing point along with heavy snowfall. The Himalayas prevent the cold winds from Central Asia from entering the subcontinent. The rainfall in India is governed mainly by pressure and surface winds, upper air circulation and western cyclonic disturbances and tropical cyclones.
- Because of the Coriolis Force, these winds move on towards the equatorial low-pressure area. The Coriolis Force also known as 'Ferrel's Law,' is an apparent force caused by the Earth's rotation. This force deflects winds towards the right in the Northern Hemisphere and towards the left in the Southern Hemisphere. The north-easterly winds are land-bearing winds; hence, they carry very little moisture and bring little or no rain in India.
- During winter, a high-pressure area is created in the north of the Himalayas. In summer, a low-pressure area develops over interior Asia as well as over North-western India. This causes a complete reversal of the direction of winds during summer.
- Winds move from the high-pressure area over the southern Indian Ocean, cross the Equator and turn right towards the low-pressure areas over the Indian subcontinent. These winds are known as the South-west monsoon winds.
- An important component of the flow is the Jet Stream. Jet Streams are a narrow belt of high altitude westerly winds that blow in the Troposphere. Their speed varies from about 110 kilometres per hour in summer to about 184 kilometres per hour in winter.
- A number of separate Jet streams have been identified. The most constant are the mid-latitude and the sub-tropical Jet streams. They originate from the Mediterranean Region and are known as Subtropical Westerly Jet Streams. An Easterly Jet Stream, called the Tropical Easterly Jet Stream, blows over peninsular India, approximately over 14°N during the Summer months. The movement of water in the oceans is called Currents.

## Climate Controls

- The day-to-day changes that we experience are referred to as Weather. Weather is the state of the atmosphere of a particular area at any point of time. Atmospheric conditions that describe the weather include elements like temperature, precipitation, pressure, wind and humidity.
- During a year, the weather changes in cycles, the cyclic changes in the atmospheric conditions are called Seasons. By observing the weather pattern for longer periods, usually over 30 years, the climate of a place can also be determined. The basic elements of weather are wind, temperature, air pressure, precipitation and moisture.
- Climate describes the long-term pattern of weather that generally prevails over an area. Based on climatic differences, the world can be divided into a number of climatic regions. Each climatic region has its own characteristic vegetation and wildlife. The climatic conditions also influence the lifestyles of the people living in these regions.

Scan to know more about this topic



Six Major Climatic Controls

### Factors Affecting India's Climate:

- The factors affecting the climate of a place are referred to as 'controls' and they are: Latitude, Altitude, Pressure and Wind System, Distance from the Sea (continentally), Ocean Currents and Relief Features.
- Altitude is another factor controlling the climate of a place. Altitude refers to the height of a place above sea level. The higher one travels into the Troposphere, the lower the temperature becomes. The rate at which the temperature drops is known as the Lapse Rate.
- The variations in air temperature control the pressure and wind system of a place. Warm air rises, creating low pressure areas, while cold air sinks, creating high pressure areas. As a result, winds blow outward from a high pressure location towards lower pressures.
- The differences in air pressures near the Equator and the Poles are the main factors that influence global pressure and Wind Systems. In India, the Tropic of Cancer passes through the central part of the country, from the Rann of Kutch in the west to Mizoram in the east. India has both tropical and subtropical types of climate.
- The distance of a place from the sea is another important factor that regulates the climate of a place.
- As the distance from the sea increases, the weather conditions become extreme. Places away from the sea have very hot summers and very cold winters. This condition is known as Continentality.
- Another important control of climate is the circulation of water and air. The air in the atmosphere and the water in the oceans are in constant motion, distributing heat around the world in regular patterns. Warm air and water move towards the Poles, while cool air and water move towards the Equator.
- Another major control of climate is the relief of a place. Mountains often act as natural barriers of wind and moisture, affecting the climate of the areas around it.

- The Himalayas influence the climate of the Indian subcontinent by protecting it from the cold air mass of Central Asia.
- The climate and related weather conditions in India are controlled by the following atmospheric conditions : Pressure and surface winds, Upper air circulation, Western cyclonic disturbances and Tropical cyclones.

## Mechanisms of the Indian Monsoon

- The climate of India is strongly influenced by the Monsoon winds. It refers to a season in which the Wind System reverses completely. The monsoons are experienced in the tropical area roughly between 20°N and 20°S.
- Various atmospheric conditions influence the monsoon winds. The first condition is the differential heating and cooling of land and water. This creates low pressure on the landmass, while high pressure is created over the seas around during day time, but is reversed during the night time.
- The second condition is the shift in the position of Inter-Tropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ). In summer, the equatorial trough, normally positioned about 5°N of the Equator, moves over the Ganga Plain creating a monsoon trough during the Monsoon Season.
- The third condition is the presence of the high-pressure area that develops east of Madagascar. It is approximately at 20°S over the Indian Ocean. The intensity and position of this high-pressure area affects the Indian Monsoon.
- The fourth condition develops during the summer. The Tibetan Plateau gets intensely heated resulting in strong vertical air currents and high pressure over the plateau about 9 km above sea level. The fifth condition develops during the Summer because of the movement of the Westerly Jet streams to the North of the Himalayas and the presence of the Tropical Easterly Jet stream over the Indian Peninsula.
- Changes in pressure over the southern oceans also affect the monsoons. In certain years, there is a reversal in the pressure conditions. This periodic change in pressure conditions is known as the Southern Oscillation or SO.
- The Southern Oscillation is connected to El Nino, which is a warm ocean current that flows past the Peruvian Coast. It flows every two to five years in place of the cold Peruvian Current. The phenomenon is referred to as ENSO (El Nino Southern Oscillations). In India, the Monsoon lasts for 100 to 120 days from early June to mid-September. The Monsoon winds encounter various atmospheric conditions on their way and hence, are pulsating in nature and not steady.
- The Monsoon arrives with a sudden downpour of rainfall that continues for several days. This is known as the 'Burst' of the Monsoon.

Scan to know more about this topic



Mechanisms of the Indian Monsoon

### Distribution of Rainfall:

- The Monsoon arrives at the southern tip of the Indian Peninsula generally by the first week of June. By early September, the Monsoon starts to withdraw or retreat and is a more gradual process. By mid-October, it withdraws completely from the northern half of the Peninsula. The withdrawal takes place progressively from north to south from the first week of December to the first week of January. This is the start of the Winter season.
- The Retreating Monsoon Winds move over the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal, and collect moisture on the way. These Monsoon winds reach the southern states of India by October, and are responsible for a second round of rainfall. These are called the Winter Monsoons. The Winter Monsoon is experienced in the states of Tamil Nadu, Kerala and Andhra Pradesh in the first week of January.

## The Seasons of India

- The changes in weather conditions of India can be broadly categorised into four distinct patterns. These are the Cold Weather Season, the Hot Weather Season, the Advancing Monsoon and the Retreating Monsoon.

### The Cold Weather Season :

- India has cold weather in the winter that begins in mid-November and lasts till February. The northern parts of India are the first to experience the cold. December and January are the coldest months in Northern India. The southern parts of India do not experience very low temperatures.
- Frost is a common phenomenon in the northern plains, while the higher slopes of the Himalayas experience snowfall.
- During winter, the north-east trade winds blow over the country. In most parts of India, the weather during the winter is dry. In some parts, like the coast of Tamil Nadu, the winds blow from the sea to the land. Hence, these places receive some amount of rainfall during the Winter.
- Other characteristic feature of the winter season experienced over the northern plains is the inflow of Cyclonic Disturbances from the west and the north-west. The winter rainfall is locally known as Mahawat.

Scan to know more about this topic



The Seasons of India

**The Hot Weather Season :**

- The sea has a moderating influence over the Peninsular region of India. Hence, there are no drastic seasonal variations in temperature pattern, and winters are not as distinct as in the north. The hot weather season in India refers to the summers that begin in March and lasts till mid-June.
- In India, summer is caused due to the apparent northward movement of the sun, which shifts the Global Heat Belt northward. 'Loo' are strong, gusty, hot, dry winds that blow during the day over north and North-western India.
- In Northern India, Dust Storms are also very common during the month of May. This is also the season for localised thunderstorms, associated with violent winds, torrential downpours, often accompanied by hail. Pre-monsoon showers are common, especially in Kerala and Karnataka and are often referred to as 'Mango Showers,' as they help in the early ripening of mangoes.

**Advancing Monsoon:**

- The advancing monsoon in India refers to the Rainy Season that lasts for a period of four months from June to September. The Trade winds from the Southern Hemisphere, which originate over the warm subtropical areas of the southern oceans, bring the South-West Monsoon Winds into India.
- Another characteristic feature of the monsoon is the 'Breaks' in rainfall and refers to the alternating wet and dry spells of rains. The Indian Monsoon is very unpredictable. These breaks occur due to the movement of the Monsoon Trough.
- The farming schedule of millions of farmers all over the country, which is dependent on the monsoons, can sometimes get disturbed.

**Retreating Monsoon:**

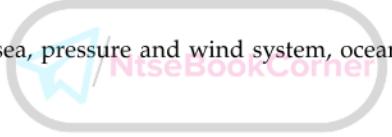
- The Retreating Monsoon refers to the transition season that lasts from October to December.
- The months of October–November form a period of transition from the hot rainy season to dry winter conditions.
- The main cause of this transition is the movement of the Sun towards the south. By the beginning of October, the Monsoon withdraws from the Northern Plains. The Retreating Monsoon season is marked by clear skies and a rise in the temperatures. The land is still moist and the weather becomes hot and humid. The days can become quite oppressive. This is commonly known as 'October Heat'.

**Monsoon as a Unifying Bond:**

- Because of the unpredictable nature of the monsoon, the distribution of rainfall varies drastically from region to region. Major variations can also be seen in the annual precipitation from year to year. The phenomenon of monsoon is an integral part of the Indian landscape, animal and plant life, agricultural calendar, and the life of the people and their festivities.

**Know the Terms**

- **Climate :** General weather conditions over a period of thirty years is said to be the Climate of a place.
- **Elements of weather :** Temperature, Atmospheric pressure, Wind, Humidity and Precipitation are the elements of weather and climate.
- **Monsoon :** Monsoon is basically a seasonal reversal in the wind through the year.
- **South-West Monsoons :** Winds move from the high-pressure area over the southern Indian Ocean, cross the Equator and turn right towards the low-pressure areas over the Indian subcontinent. These winds are known as the South-West Monsoon winds.
- **Subtropical Westerly Jet Streams :** The most constant are the mid-latitude and the Sub-tropical Jet Streams. They originate from the Mediterranean region and are known as Subtropical Westerly Jet Streams.
- **Easterly Jet Stream :** An Easterly Jet Stream, called the Tropical Easterly Jet Stream, blows over Peninsular India, approximately over 14°N during the summer months.
- **Currents :** The movement of water in the oceans is called Currents.
- **Coriolis Force :** It is an apparent force caused by the Earth's rotation. This force deflects winds towards the right in the Northern Hemisphere and towards the left in the Southern Hemisphere.
- **Weather :** Weather is the state of the atmosphere of a particular area at any point of time in context to heat, cloudiness, dryness, sunshine, wind, rain, etc.
- **Atmospheric Conditions :** Atmospheric conditions describes the weather including elements like temperature, precipitation, pressure, wind and humidity.
- **Climate controls :** The interplay of latitude, altitude, distance from the sea, pressure and wind system, ocean currents and relief features determine climatic conditions of a place.
- **Altitude :** Altitude refers to the height of a place above the sea level.



- **Continentiality** : As the distance from the sea increases, the weather conditions become extreme. Places away from the sea have very hot summers and very cold winters. This condition is known as Continentality.
- **Southern Oscillation** : Changes in pressure over the southern oceans also affect the monsoons. In certain years, there is a reversal in the pressure conditions. This periodic change in pressure conditions is known as the Southern Oscillation or SO.
- **Burst of Monsoon** : The Monsoon arrives with a sudden downpour of rainfall that continues for several days. This is known as the 'Burst' of the Monsoon.
- **Mahawat** : The winter rainfall is locally known as Mahawat.
- **Frost** : A state in freezing, frozen dew.
- **Loo** : 'Loo' are strong, gusty, hot, dry winds that blow during the day over North and North-Western India.
- **Mango Showers** : Pre- monsoon showers are often referred to as 'Mango Showers,' as they help in the early ripening of mangoes.
- **Advancing Monsoon** : An Advancing Monsoon in India refers to the rainy season that lasts for a period of 4 months from June to September.
- **Retreating Monsoon** : The Retreating Monsoon refers to the transition season that lasts from October to December.



## (A) OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

**1 Mark Each**



### Stand Alone MCQs

1. Which is the coldest place in India?

- (A) Shimla                  (B) Dras  
 (C) Kashmir                (D) Mussoorie

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

*Explanation:* Dras is the coldest place in India. The town is located in the Kargil district of the union territory of Ladakh.

2. Which place in India records the highest rainfall in the world?

- (A) Cherrapunji  
 (B) Thiruvananthapuram  
 (C) Mawsynram  
 (D) Siliguri

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

*Explanation:* Mawsynram receives the highest rainfall in India. Mawsynram village is situated in East Khasi Hills district of Meghalaya.

3. The climate of India is described as which type?

- (A) Summer                  (B) Winter  
 (C) Monsoon                (D) Tropical

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

*Explanation:* The climate of India is described as a Subtropical Monsoon.

4. What type of climate does Rajasthan Deserts have?

- (A) Tropical Monsoon      (B) Continental  
 (C) Equatorial              (D) Dry

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

*Explanation:* Rajasthan has a desert continental climate in general.

5. Why are the thickly populated deltas of the Godavari, the Krishna and the Kaveri frequently struck by cyclones?

- (A) Due to the occurrence of cyclonic depressions which originate over the Andaman Sea.  
 (B) Because the low-pressure conditions which get transferred to the Bay of Bengal by early November.  
 (C) Both A and B  
 (D) None of these

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

*Explanation:* The thickly populated deltas of the Godavari, the Krishna, and the Kaveri are frequently struck by cyclones. Because of the low-pressure conditions, which get transferred to the Bay of Bengal by early November.

6. Which one of these climatic conditions takes place in the hot weather season?

- (A) Blowing of loo  
 (B) Kaal Baisakhi  
 (C) An elongated low-pressure area in the region extending from the Thar Desert in the northwest to Patna and Chotanagpur plateau in the east and the south-east.  
 (D) All of these

Ans. Option (D) is correct.

*Explanation:* A striking feature of the hot weather season is the 'loo'. These are strong, gusty, hot, dry winds blowing during the day over north and north-western India. These storms bring temporary relief as they lower the temperature and may bring light rain and cool breeze. This is also the season for localized thunderstorms, associated with violent winds, torrential downpours, often accompanied by hail. In West Bengal, these storms are known as the 'Kaal Baisakhi'.



7. From which of the following pressure belts do the north-easterly trade winds originate?

- (A) Equatorial low pressure belt
- (B) Subtropical high pressure belt of the Northern Hemisphere
- (C) Subtropical high pressure belt of the Southern Hemisphere
- (D) Temperate low pressure belt of the Northern Hemisphere

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

**Explanation:** From the Subtropical high-pressure belt of the Northern Hemisphere pressure belts, the north-easterly trade winds originate.

8. Which winds bring widespread rainfall over the mainland of India?

- (A) Southwest Monsoon winds
- (B) Northeast Monsoon winds
- (C) Southeast Monsoon winds
- (D) Northwest Monsoon winds

Ans. Option (A) is correct.

**Explanation:** Southwest Monsoon winds bring widespread rainfall over the Mainland of India.

9. Which among the following states is frequently struck by cyclones?

- |                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| (A) Rajasthan   | (B) Kerala |
| (C) Maharashtra | (D) Orissa |

Ans. Option (D) is correct.

**Explanation:** Orissa is frequently struck by cyclones.

10. In the upper parts of the Himalayas, precipitation is mostly in the form of \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) Snowfall
- (B) Rain
- (C) hail
- (D) Dew

Ans. Option (A) is correct.

**Explanation:** In the upper parts of the Himalayas, precipitation is mostly in the form of snowfall.

11. Which latitude passes through the middle of our country, giving it the characteristics of tropical as well as subtropical climate?

- (A) Tropic of Capricorn
- (B) Tropic of Cancer
- (C) Equator
- (D) Prime Meridian

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

**Explanation:** The Tropic of Cancer almost divides the country into two equal parts from the Rann of Kutch to Mizoram. The region lying south of the Tropic of Cancer is Tropical. The region in the north is Subtropical.

12. The peninsular part of India experiences peak summers earlier than northern India because \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) There is less rainfall in the peninsula during that time.
- (B) Cold waves from Central Asia sweeps through the northern plains during the time.
- (C) Due to northward movement of the sun, the

global heat belt shifts northward.

- (D) Clouds do not form in those months.

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

**Explanation:** The peninsular part of India experiences peak summers earlier than northern India because due to the northward movement of the sun, the global heat belt shifts northward.

13. The Indian Subcontinent experiences comparatively milder Winters as compared to Central Asia due to which of the following factors?

- (A) The Tropic of Cancer
- (B) The surrounding seas
- (C) The Himalayas
- (D) Ocean currents

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

**Explanation:** The Himalayas prevent the cold winds from Central Asia from entering the Subcontinent. It is because of these mountains that this Subcontinent experiences comparatively milder winters as compared to central Asia.

14. Which of the following terms refers to the sum total of weather conditions and variations over a large area for a long period of time (more than thirty years)?

- (A) Atmosphere
- (B) Annual range of temperature
- (C) Climate
- (D) Monsoons

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

**Explanation:** Climate refers to the total of weather conditions and variations over a large area for a long period (more than thirty years).

15. Which one of the following characteristics the cold weather season in India?

- (A) Warm days and warm nights
- (B) Warm days and cold nights
- (C) Cool days and cold nights
- (D) Cold days and warm nights.

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

**Explanation:** Warm days and cold nights are one of the following characteristics of the cold-weather season in India.



### Assertion and Reason Based MCQs

Directions : In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as :

- (A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

## CLIMATE

**1. Assertion (A) :** 'Western Disturbances' disturb the calm and quite weather of North and Northwestern India by causing cyclonic rains over the plains and snowfall in the mountains.

**Reason (R) :** Winter rainfall caused by them locally known as 'Mahawat' is of immense importance for the cultivation of Rabi crops.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Western Disturbances' disturb the calm and quiet weather of North and Northwestern India by causing cyclonic rains over the plains and snowfall in the mountains. The western cyclonic disturbances are experienced in the north and north western parts of India during the winter season. This is caused due to the westerly winds that flow from west to east between 30°-60° latitude.

**2. Assertion (A) :** Arabian Sea branch of South West Monsoons is responsible for good rainfall in the Northern Plains of India.

**Reason(R) :** The part of South West Monsoons which blows over the Arabian Sea is responsible for high rainfall on the western coast of India.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Arabian sea branch of south west monsoon is responsible for giving rainfall in northern plains because when South West trade winds strike the western ghats and give good rainfall.

**3. Assertion(A) :** The houses in the Tarai region and in Goa and Mangalore have sloping roofs.

**Reason(R) :** These regions receive heavy rainfall.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Tarai region, Goa, and Mangalore receive heavy rainfall. The houses in these regions have sloping roofs because water drains on a sloping roof better than it does on a flat roof.

**4. Assertion(A) :** India has a vast coastal area where the maximum elevation is about 30 metres.

**Reason (R) :** This subcontinent experiences comparatively milder winters as compared to central Asia.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** India has mountains to the north, which have an average height of about 6,000 metres. The Himalayas prevent the cold winds from Central Asia from entering the subcontinent. It is because of these mountains that this subcontinent experiences comparatively milder winters as compared to central Asia.

**5. Assertion (A) :** The climate of India is strongly influenced by Monsoon winds.

**Reason (R) :** The Sailors who came to India in historic times benefited from the reversal of the wind system as they came by sailing ships at the mercy of the winds.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The climate of India is strongly influenced by Monsoon winds. The Sailors who came to India in historic times were one of the first to have noticed the phenomenon of the monsoon. They benefited from the reversal of the wind system as they came by sailing ships at the mercy of the winds. The Arabs, who had also come to India as Traders named this seasonal reversal of the Wind System 'Monsoon'.

**6. Assertion (A) :** The Tamil Nadu coast receives summer rainfall.

**Reason (R) :** Tamil Nadu receives rainfall due to the northeast trade winds. They are offshore winds that blow from land to sea, but due to India's topography, they change direction and flow over the Bay of Bengal and pick up moisture.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Tamil Nadu coast receives winter rainfall. It receives rainfall due to the northeast trade winds. They are offshore winds that blow from land to sea, but due to India's topography, they change direction and flow over the Bay of Bengal and pick up moisture.



### Case-based MCQs

**I. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow :**

The cold weather season begins from mid-November in northern India and stays till February. December and January are the coldest months in the northern part of India. The temperature decreases from south to the north. The average temperature of Chennai on the eastern coast, is between 24° C - 25° Celsius, while in the northern plains, it ranges between 10°C and 15° Celsius. Days are warm and nights are cold. Frost is common in these winds blow through the Ganga valley from the west and the northwest. The weather is normally marked by clear sky, low temperatures and low humidity and feeble, variable winds.

A characteristic feature of the cold weather season over the northern plains is the inflow of cyclonic disturbances from the west and the northwest. These low-pressure systems, originate over the Mediterranean Sea and western Asia and move into India, along with the westerly flow. They cause the much-needed winter rains over the plains and snowfall in the mountains. Although the total amount of winter rainfall locally known as 'Mahawat' is small, they are of immense importance for the cultivation of 'Rabi' crops.

**1. In cold weather season of winter, the temperature decreases from \_\_\_\_\_.**

- (A) South to the North (B) East to the West  
 (C) North to the West (D) South to the East



**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** In cold weather season of winter, the temperature decreases from South to the North. The cold and low temperature begins in November and stays till January as the coldest months.

**2. Which one of the following characterizes the cold weather season in India?**

- (A) Warm days and warm nights.
- (B) Warm days and cold nights
- (C) Cold days and cold nights
- (D) Cold days and warm nights

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** During the cold season, the days are warm and nights are cold. When the temperature decreases, frost is commonly experienced in Northern India.

**3. Some amount of rainfall occurs on the \_\_\_\_\_ coast from these winds, as they blow sea to land.**

- (A) Coromandel (B) Malabar
- (C) Kerala (D) Tamil Nadu

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Some amount of rainfall occurs on the Tamil Nadu coast from these winds, as they blow sea to land.

**4. Winter rainfall called \_\_\_\_\_ is of immense importance for the cultivation of \_\_\_\_\_ crops.**

- (A) Monsoon Showers, Rabi Crops
- (B) Mango Showers, Kharif Crops
- (C) Mahawat, Rabi Crops
- (D) Kaal Baisakhi, Kharif Crops

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Winter rainfall called Mahawat is of immense importance for the cultivation of Kharif crops. Although the total amount of winter rainfall locally known as 'Mahawat' is small, they are of immense importance for the cultivation of 'Rabi' crops.

## II. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow :

There are six major controls of the climate of any place. They are: Latitude, Altitude, Pressure and Wind system, Distance from the sea (continentality), Ocean currents and Relief features.

Due to the curvature of the Earth, the amount of solar energy received varies according to Latitude. As a result, air temperature generally decreases from the equator towards the poles. As one goes from the surface of the earth to higher altitudes, the atmosphere becomes less dense and temperature decreases. The hills are therefore cooler during summers. The pressure and wind system of any area depend on the latitude and altitude of the place. Thus, it influences the temperature and rainfall pattern. The sea exerts a moderating influence on climate: As the distance from the sea increases, its moderating influence decreases and

the people experience extreme weather conditions. This condition is known as continentality (i.e., very hot during summers and very cold during winters). Ocean currents along with onshore winds affect the climate of the coastal areas. For example, any coastal area with warm or cold currents flowing past it, will be warmed or cooled if the winds are onshore.

**1. Due to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the Earth, the amount of Solar energy received varies according to Latitude.**

- (A) circumference (B) radius
- (C) curvature (D) diameter

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Due to the curvature of the Earth, the amount of Solar energy received varies according to Latitude.

**2. As one goes from the surface of the Earth to higher altitudes, the \_\_\_\_\_ becomes less dense and temperature decreases.**

- (A) Atmosphere (B) Biosphere
- (C) Hydrosphere (D) Lithosphere

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** As one goes from the surface of the Earth to higher altitudes, the Atmosphere becomes less dense and temperature decreases.

**3. The condition known as \_\_\_\_\_ when it is very hot during summers and very cold during winters.**

- (A) Continuity of Climate
- (B) Climatic Condition
- (C) Continentality Climate
- (D) Changing Climate

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Continentality refers to a climatic effect that emerges because of the different range of temperature that exists at places lying in the interior of the continent away from the moderating influence of the sea and the places that are located near the continent.

**4. Relief feature plays a major role in determining \_\_\_\_\_.**

- (A) The temperature of a place
- (B) The weather of a place
- (C) The season of a place
- (D) The climate of a place

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Relief feature plays a major role in determining the climate of a place. The higher the place, the cooler it is, and the lower the place, the hotter it is because the temperature decreased at 1-degree Celsius for every 165 meters.

## III. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow :

The summer months experience rising temperature and falling air pressure in the northern part of the country. Towards the end of May, an elongated low-pressure area develops in the region extending from the Thar Desert in the northwest to Patna and

Chota Nagpur Plateau in the east and southeast. Circulation of air begins to set in around this trough. A striking feature of the hot weather season is the 'loo'. These are strong, gusty, hot, dry winds blowing during the day over the north and northwestern India. Sometimes they even continue until late in the evening. Direct exposure to these winds may even prove to be fatal. Dust storms are very common during the month of May in northern India. These storms bring temporary relief as they lower the temperature and may bring light rain and cool breeze. This is also the season for localised thunderstorms, associated with violent winds, torrential downpours often accompanied by hail. In West Bengal, these storms are known as the 'Kaal Baisakhi'.

Towards the close of the summer season, pre-monsoon showers are common, especially in Kerala and Karnataka. They help in the early ripening of mangoes, and are often referred to as 'Mango Showers'.

**1. The rising temperature and falling air pressure in summer is seen in which part of the country?**

- (A) Western (B) Eastern  
(C) Southern (D) Northern

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

*Explanation:* The rising temperature and falling air pressure in summer are seen in the Northern part of the country.

**2. The wind blowing in the northern plains in**

**summers is known as \_\_\_\_\_.**

- (A) Kaal Baisakhi (B) Loo  
(C) Trade Winds (D) None of the above

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

*Explanation:* The wind blowing in the northern plains in summers is known as loo. This wind is a strong summer wind that blows from the West of India, it is gusty, hot, and dry, and it blows over North India and Pakistan's western Indo-Gangetic Plain.

**3. Kal Baisakhi is associated with which state?**

- (A) Andhra Pradesh (B) Bengal  
(C) Madhya Pradesh (D) Arunachal Pradesh

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

*Explanation:* Kal Baisakhi is associated with West Bengal. Kal Baisakhi is localized thunderstorms, associated with violent winds, torrential downpours, often accompanied by hail.

**4. Mango showers occur in which group of two states?**

- (A) Kerala and Karnataka  
(B) Kerala and Tamil Nadu  
(C) Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh  
(D) Tamil Nadu and Kerala

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

*Explanation:* Mango showers occur in Kerala and Karnataka.

## ✓ (B) SUBJECTIVE QUESTIONS



### Short Answer Type Questions

(3 Marks Each)

**Q. 1. Where is Mawsynram located? Why does Mawsynram receive the highest amount of rainfall?** (Board 2012, Term II)

**Ans.** (i) Mawsynram is located in the southern ranges of the Khasi Hills at a height of 1,500 m above the sea level. It receives the highest rainfall in the World. Annual rainfall is about 1,140 cm.

(ii) This place receives the highest amount of rainfall because it is enclosed by hills on three sides. The relief features give this place a tunnel-shaped location. The Bay of Bengal monsoon is trapped in these hills.

(iii) The winds try to get out of it, but are forced to pour down there.  $(1\frac{1}{2}+1\frac{1}{2}=3)$

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012)

### Answering Tip

• Mawsynram is located in the Khasi Hills and receives highest rainfall as this place is enclosed by hills on three sides and the Monsoon gets trapped in these hills.

**Q. 2. What are Jet Streams? How is Jet Stream related with Western Cyclonic Disturbances?** (Board 2011, Term II)

**Ans.** Jet Streams are a narrow belt of high altitude westerly winds in the Troposphere. Their speed varies from about 110 km/h in summer to about 184 km/h in winter.

(i) Little amount of winter rains over the plains and snowfall in the mountains are an impact of western cyclonic disturbances from the Mediterranean Sea.

(ii) They have immense importance for the cultivation of Rabi crops in the North India.  $(1+2=3)$   
(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011)

**Q. 3. What influence has the Himalayas on India's climate?** (Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.** The Himalayas, the lofty mountains, have provided India with a compact physical setting.

### Commonly Made Error

- Students mention only the state and write the reason that it receives highest rainfall.



The Himalayas protect the sub-continent from the northern winds. These cold and chilly winds originate near the Arctic Circle and blow across central and eastern Asia.

**Q. 4. Describe the Western Cyclonic Disturbance and its impact on climate.** A (Board Term II, 2015)

- Ans.** (i) Western Cyclonic Disturbances are a weather phenomena of the winters.  
(ii) They are brought in by the westerly flow from the Mediterranean region.  
(iii) They usually influence the weather of the North and North-western regions of India.

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015) (1×3=3)

A Q. 5. What are Jet Streams and how do they affect the climate of India? B (Board Term II, 2012)

(NCERT)

**Ans.** Jet Streams are high-velocity westerly winds which blow through a narrow zone in the upper Troposphere. The Westerly flows are responsible for the western disturbances experienced in the north and north-west parts of India. The Easterly jet streams cause tropical depressions during the Monsoon as well as during the months of October–November.

A Q. 6. What are the factors affecting the climate of India? U (Board Term II, 2012)

OR

What are the controls affecting the climate of India? (NCERT)

**Ans.** Factors affecting the climate of India are:

- (i) **Latitude:** The temperature decreases from the Equator towards the Poles. Places located on lower latitudes are hotter than the places located on higher latitudes. Solar energy is present at a higher rate more in lower latitudes.
- (ii) **Altitude:** At higher altitudes, the atmosphere becomes less dense and temperature decreases. Hills are cooler during summers, e.g., climate of Shimla is cooler than that of Delhi.
- (iii) **Distance from the sea:** Sea has a moderating influence on the climate. As the distance from the ocean or sea increases, its moderating influence decreases and extreme weather conditions are experienced, i.e., very hot in summer and very cold in winter.
- (iv) **Ocean currents:** Ocean currents along with onshore winds affect the climate of the coastal regions. Any coastal area with warm or cold currents flowing fast, will be cooled or warmed if the winds are onshore.

(Any three) (1×3=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students could not give the proper answer of the factors affecting the climate of India.

#### Answering Tip

- Major factors affecting the climate of India include, latitude, altitude, distance from the sea, ocean currents and reliefs.

A Q. 7. Highlight any three characteristics of cold weather season in India. A

(Board Term II, 2012)

**Ans.** Characteristics of cold weather season in India are:

- (i) Duration of this season is mid November in the northern Plains and stays till February. December and January are the coldest months in the northern parts of the country.
- (ii) The temperature decreases from south to north. The days are warm and nights are cold.
- (iii) Frost is common in the north and the higher slopes of the Himalayas experience snowfall.
- (iv) North-east trade winds blow all over the country. They blow from land to sea. For most part of the country, it is a dry season. Some amount of rainfall occurs on the coast of Tamil Nadu from these winds, as in this region they blow from sea to land.

(Any three)

(CBSE Marking Scheme 2012) (1×3=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students forgot to write features as per different directions.

#### Answering Tip

- Discuss about the characteristics of Winter Season with examples of frost in Himalayas. And also compare with another states of India.

A Q. 8. Why do the Western Ghats receive more rainfall than the Eastern Ghats? Explain briefly. U (Board Term II, 2011)

- Ans.** (i) The Western Ghats receive rainfall from the Arabian Sea monsoon winds.  
(ii) They do not allow these winds to cross over without shedding their moisture on the western slopes.  
(iii) A part of these winds that reaches the Eastern Ghats is almost dry. (1×3=3)

A Q. 9. Indian Monsoon is highly unpredictable? Do you agree with this statement. Give reasons in support of your answer. A

(Board Term II, 2014, 2013)

**Ans.** Yes, the Monsoon is known for its uncertainties.

- (i) The alteration of day and wet spells vary in intensity, frequency and duration.
- (ii) While it causes heavy floods in one part, it may be responsible for droughts in the other.
- (iii) It is often irregular in its arrival and its retreat.

Hence, it sometimes disturbs the farming schedule of millions of farmers all over the country.

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013-2014) (1+3=3)

**Q. 10.** State any three factors which help us to understand the Mechanism of Monsoon. A  
(Board Term II, 2012)

**OR**

Describe any three factors which affect the Mechanism of Monsoon. (Board Term II, 2011)  
OR

Describe the Mechanism of Monsoon.  
(Board Term II 2011) (NCERT)

**Ans.** The factors which help us to understand the Mechanism of Monsoon are:

- (i) The differential heating and cooling of land and water.
- (ii) The shift in the position of Inter Tropical Convergence Zone [ITCZ].
- (iii) The presence of the high pressure: East of Madagascar.
- (iv) The Tibetan Plateau gets intensely heated during summer. (Any three) (1×3=3)

**Q. 11.** What is meant by the term 'Monsoon'? Mention main characteristics of the Monsoon. U  
(Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.** The word Monsoon is derived from the Arabic word 'Mausim', which literally means 'Season'. Monsoon refers to the seasonal reversal in the wind direction during a year.

**Characteristics of Indian Monsoon :**

- (i) They are not steady winds but pulsating in nature. They vary from year to year.
- (ii) They have tendency of breaks in rainfall. It has wet and dry spells. They take place only for a few days at a time.
- (iii) The Monsoons are known for their uncertainties. They are often irregular in their arrival and retreat.
- (iv) The monsoons are unevenly distributed. They may cause flood in one part and may be responsible for droughts in the other. (Any two) (1+2=3)

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011)

**Q. 12.** Define Monsoon. Differentiate between 'Burst of Monsoon' and 'Break of the Monsoon'. R  
(Board Term II, 2011) (NCERT)

**Ans.** Monsoon refers to the seasonal reversal in the wind direction during a year.

**Burst of the Monsoon :** Rainfall increases suddenly and continues constantly for several days.

**Break of the Monsoon:** Monsoon rains take place for a few days only. It is characterised by rainless intervals. (1+2=3)

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011)

**Q. 13.** Why does India have a Monsoon type of climate? R (NCERT)

**Ans.** (i) Climate of India is strongly governed by the Monsoon Winds. Monsoon Winds are confined to tropical lands between 20°N and 20°S.

- (ii) In the Indian sub-continent, the Himalayas guide the flow of the Monsoon Winds bringing the whole

of sub-continent under the influence of these winds.

- (iii) These winds account for 75% to 90% of annual rainfall from June to September.
- (iv) It is influenced by South-west Monsoons, Retreating Monsoons and North-east Monsoons.

(Any three) (1×3=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students forgot to mention accurate temperature.

#### Answering Tip

- Explain why Indian climate is called as Monsoonal climate and also explain the dependence of Monsoonal Winds on the Himalayas, which guide the flow of Monsoon Winds.

**Q. 14.** Why does the rainfall decrease from the east to the west in Northern India? U (NCERT)

**Ans.** The Bay of Bengal branch of south-west monsoon moves towards north-east, bringing more moisture and causes heavy rainfall in this region. As it moves further towards the west, it carries less moisture content which results in decrease in rainfall in the west.

**Q. 15.** What is Inter Tropic Convergence Zone (ITCZ)? Explain. C U

**Ans.** Inter Tropical Convergence Zone:

- (i) It is a trough normally positioned about 5 degree North of the Equator.
- (ii) This zone lies more or less parallel to the Equator.
- (iii) Moves north or south with apparent movement of the Sun.
- (iv) It is a broad trough of low pressure in equatorial latitudes. (Any three) (1×3 = 3)

**Q. 16.** Mention the differences between Weather and Climate. Which type of climate does India have? A (Board Term II, 2012)

**Ans.** (i) Climate refers to the sum total of weather conditions and variations over large areas over a long period of time (more than 30 years), whereas, weather refers to the state of atmosphere over an area at any point of time.

(ii) The weather conditions fluctuate very often within a day, but there is some common pattern over few weeks or months. On the basis of general monthly atmospheric conditions, the year is divided into seasons such as winter, summer or rainy seasons.

The Indian climate is described as 'Monsoon type'.

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012) (2+1=3)

**Q. 17.** Describe the climatic conditions of India during Retreating Monsoon. A

(Board Term II, 2012)

**Ans.** Climatic conditions during Retreating Monsoons :

- (i) This is the transition period during the months of October and November.



(ii) The season changes from hot and rainy to dry winter conditions. The retreat of the monsoon is marked by clear skies and rise in temperature. Day temperatures are high and nights are cool and pleasant.

(iii) Low-pressure conditions get transferred to the Bay of Bengal by early November.

(iv) Cyclonic depressions in the Andaman Sea cause heavy rainfall and are destructive tropical cyclones. (Any three) (1×3=3)

**Q. 18. Explain the terms :** R

(a) Loo, (b) Kaal Baisakhi, (c) Mango showers.

(Board Term II, 2012)

**OR**

Define 'Kaal Baisakhi' and 'Loo'. In which parts of India are they experienced?

**Ans.** (a) **Loo:** Strong, dusty, hot and dry winds blowing during the day over the North and North-western India.

(b) **Kaal Baisakhi:** Localised thunderstorms, associated with violent winds and torrential downpours. In West Bengal, these storms are known as Kaal Baisakhi.

(c) **Mango showers:** Pre- monsoon showers which help in the early ripening of mangoes are called 'Mango Showers'. (1×3=3)

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012)

**Q. 19. Define Climate and Weather. What are the common elements between the two?** R

(Board Term II, 2012)

**Ans. Climate:** Sum total of weather conditions and variations over a large area for a longer time is called Climate.

**Weather:** State of atmosphere over an area at any point of time is known as Weather.

**Common elements:** Temperature, atmospheric pressure, wind, humidity and precipitation.

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012) (1×3=3)

**Q. 20. What are Western Disturbances? How do they affect the climate of India?** U

(Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.** Western Disturbances are the Temperate Cyclones which originate over the Mediterranean Sea and Western Asia, and move into India, along with the westerly flow of Jet Streams.

(i) They disturb the calm and quite weather of North and North-Western India by causing cyclonic rains over the plains and snowfall in the mountains.

(ii) Winter rainfall caused by them locally known as 'Mahawat' is of immense importance for the cultivation of Rabi crops. (1+2=3)

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011)

#### Commonly Made Error

- The Western Disturbances are taken to be as the Monsoonal Precipitation Pattern.

#### Answering Tip

- The Western Disturbances are the Non-monsoonal precipitation pattern driven by the westerlies.

**Q. 21. Why does Mumbai receive rainfall in summer while Chennai receives rainfall in winter?** A

**Ans.** (i) Mumbai receives rainfall in summer from the Arabian Sea Branch from June to September.

(ii) Mumbai receives rainfall in summer as it is located on the western coast.

(iii) It is on the windward side of Western Ghats.

**Chennai receives rainfall in winter as :**

(i) It is located on the eastern coast.

(ii) The Arabian Sea Branch becomes offshore.

(iii) The Bay of Bengal Branch moves parallel to the eastern coast.

(iv) Chennai receives rainfall from north-east monsoons and by cyclones from October to December.

(Any three)

#### Long Answer Type Questions

(5 Marks Each)

**Q. 1.** "India has diverse climatic conditions." Explain by giving two examples each of temperature and precipitation. A (Board Term II, 2011)

**OR**

Examine the regional variations in climatic conditions within the country with reference to temperature and precipitation.

(Board Term II, 2011) (NCERT)

#### Ans. Temperature:

(i) In May, 45°C temperature is common to be experienced in North-western parts of India.

(ii) In December and January, the temperature decreases from south to north, e.g., Chennai 25°C and in Northern Plains 10°C.

#### Precipitation:

(i) In June and July, windward side of Western Ghats receives very heavy rainfall.

(iii) Mawsynram receives the highest average rainfall in the world.

(iii) Rajasthan and parts of Gujarat get scanty rainfall.

(Any two) (2½+2½=5)

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students forgot to mention months.

#### Answering Tip

- Mention examples of two places in India with difference each from the point of view of temperature and rainfall.

**Q. 2. Explain why the distribution of rainfall in India is uneven.** U (Board Term II, 2011)

**OR**

"Rainfall is unevenly distributed in India." Justify in five points.

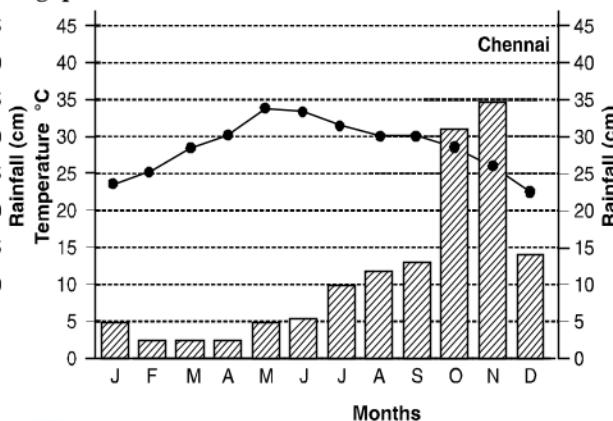
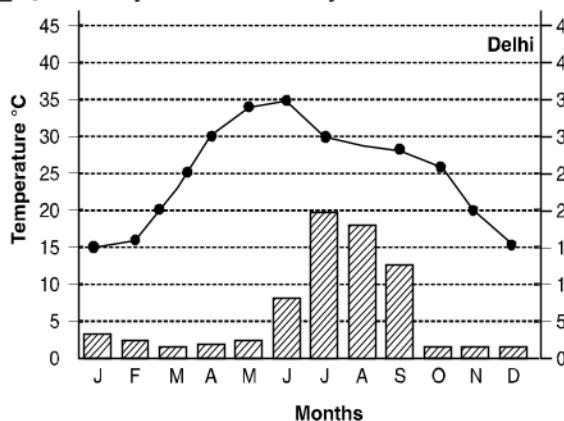
(Board Term II, 2011)

## CLIMATE

- Ans.** (i) Monsoon rains are confined only to few months of a year.  
(ii) The topography of India leads to more rainfall in some regions while less in others.

- (iii) Cyclones help rain in scattering at places, while other places remain without rain.  
(iv) Whole of India does not receive rain by Monsoon Winds. Eastern Coast of India gets rain only from North-east monsoons during the month of December–January.  $(1\frac{1}{4} \times 4 = 5)$

**Q. 3.** Study the data carefully and answer the following questions: A



(a) Which station has the higher range of temperature and why?

(b) Which station receives the higher amount of rainfall? Name the two most rainy months of this station.

(Board Term II, 2011)

- Ans.** (a) Delhi has the higher range of temperature as it is not a coastal area or we can say it is far away from the sea. So, the temperature is not moderate in this station.  
(b) Chennai receives higher amount of rains. The two most rainy months of this station are October and November.  $(2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5)$

and north-western parts of the country are brought in by the westerly flow. 5

**Q. 4.** Describe any five characteristic features of Monsoon. A (Board Term II, 2015)

**Ans. Value Points:**

- (i) Sudden burst, continues for several days.
- (ii) Breaks in rainfall, wet and dry spells.
- (iii) Variation in intensity, frequency and duration.
- (iv) Arrival and retreat, both are irregular.
- (v) Amount of rainfall is unpredictable; may cause floods or drought.  $(1 \times 5 = 5)$

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015)

**Q. 5.** Explain any three factors controlling the Indian weather conditions. (Board 2013, Term II)

OR

State any three atmospheric conditions which govern the climate and associated weather conditions in India. A

**Ans.** The climate and associated weather conditions in India are governed by the following atmospheric conditions:

**(i) Pressure and Surface Winds:** Pressure and surface wind conditions in India are unique. During winters, there is high pressure area in north of the Himalayas. In summers, a low-pressure area develops over interior Asia as well as over North-western India.

**(ii) Upper Air Circulation:** The upper air circulation in the oceans are dominated by westerly flow. An important component of this flow is Jet Streams.

**(iii) Western Cyclonic Disturbances:** The western Cyclonic Disturbances experienced in the north

**Q. 6.** How is the Arabian Sea Branch of South West Monsoons responsible for good rainfall in the Northern Plains of India? Why doesn't it give rain in the Central Peninsula? U

(Board 2011, Term II)

**Ans.** (i) The part of South West Monsoons which blows over the Arabian Sea is responsible for high rainfall on the western coast of India.

(ii) These winds enter through Saurashtra and enter the Northern Plains. These winds strike the Himalayas and give fairly good rainfall and they abandon moisture.

(iii) South West monsoons are perpendicular to the direction of the Western Ghats, thus, they give heavy rainfall on the windward side of the Western Ghats.

(iv) Central Peninsula lies on the leeward side of the Western Ghats. This Arabian Sea branch of south west monsoon does not reach the region.

$(1\frac{1}{4} \times 4 = 5)$

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students could not define proper branches of the Monsoon.

#### Answering Tip

- Proper knowledge of both the branches of the monsoon i.e., Arabian Sea branch and Bay of Bengal branch and compare which branches of the monsoon winds is responsible for good rainfall.



**AI** Q. 7. Define Burst of Monsoons. Give an account of the climatic conditions of the cold weather season in India. **R** (Board Term II, 2011)

OR

Give an account of the weather conditions and characteristics of the cold weather season.

(Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans. Burst of Monsoons :** When Monsoons arrive in India, the normal rainfall increases suddenly and continues constantly for several days. This is called 'Burst of Monsoons'.

- (i) Cold weather season: November to February
- (ii) The temperature decreases from south to north.
- (iii) Days are warm and nights are cold.
- (iv) North-east trade winds prevail over the country.
- (v) The weather is marked by clear sky, low temperature, low humidity and feeble variable winds.
- (vi) Low pressure system of the Mediterranean Sea moves into India and causes rainfall over the plains and snowfall in the mountains.

(Any five) (1+4=5)

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011)

**AI** Q. 8. Describe any five characteristic features of the Hot Weather Season in India. **A**

(Board Term II, 2015)

**Ans. (i)** March to May.

- (ii) Low pressure develops extending from Thar Desert, in the North-west to Patna and Chota Nagpur Plateau in the east and south-east.
- (iii) Temperature ranges between 38 degree Celsius to 45 degree Celsius in the north.

(iv) Pre-monsoon showers are common; are known as Kaal Baisakhi, Mango Showers.

(v) **Striking feature :** Loo, a hot, dry, dusty and strong wind blows over the North and North-west India, dust storms.  $(1 \times 5 = 5)$

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students commonly make some errors like they do not mention the features or characteristics as per region wise.

#### Answering Tip

- Discuss the features of summer season in India and also classified the characteristics of the hot summer season. And also mention the region wise temperature variations.

Q. 9. Differentiate between the Cold Weather Season and the Hot Weather Season of India by explaining two distinctive features of each. **A**

(Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans. Cold Weather Season:**

- (i) It begins from mid November in northern India and stays till February.
- (ii) The temperature decreases from south to north.
- (iii) Days are warm and nights are cold.

**Hot Weather Season :**

- (i) It begins from March and stays till May.
- (ii) Experiences rising temperature and falling air pressure in North India.
- (iii) Hot and dry wind called 'Loo' blows during the day.

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011) (2½+2½=5)

Join Us On Telegram



## CHAPTER

## 5

NATURAL VEGETATION  
AND WILDLIFE

## Syllabus

- *Factors affecting Vegetation.*
- *Vegetation types.*
- *Wild Life Conservation.*

 Learning Outcomes

- *Explain the nature of diverse flora and fauna as well as their distribution.*
- *Develop concern about the need to protect the biodiversity of our country.*

## Revision Notes

## Biodiversity—Natural Vegetation and Wildlife

- A plant community that has grown naturally without human aid is called Natural Vegetation. Natural vegetation that has been left undisturbed by humans for a long time is called Virgin Vegetation. Sacred groves are forests that have been protected for ages by traditional societies.
- Virgin vegetation that is purely Indian is known as 'endemic or indigenous species'. Plants that have come from outside India are termed as 'exotic plants', like some species of orchids.
- Biodiversity in a region typically refers to its flora and fauna. Flora refers to the plants of a particular region or period. Fauna is a collective term used for the species of animals in a particular region or period.
- Biodiversity is influenced by relief, climate and ecosystem in a region.
- Relief in a region includes the land and the soil type found there. Different types of soils provide the basis for different types of vegetation.
- Climate refers to three aspects of a region: the temperature, the photoperiod or duration of sunlight and precipitation. These aspects, along with the soil and land type, determine the type and extent of vegetation.
- As the temperature rises, the type of vegetation slowly changes. The factors that determine the duration of sunlight are : The latitude of a region, the altitude of a region and the duration of the day.
- Areas of heavy rainfall typically have more dense vegetation as compared to areas of less rainfall.

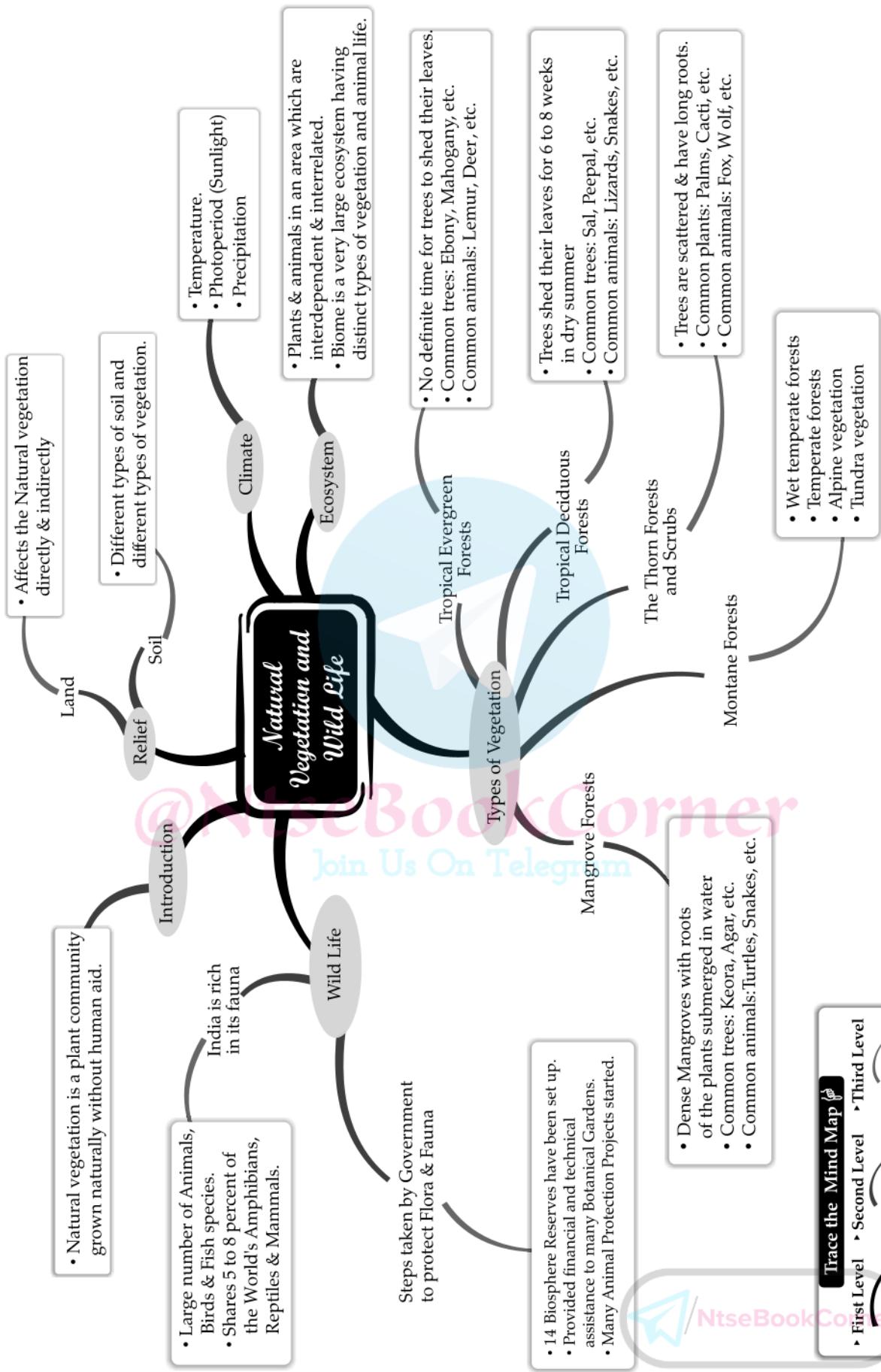
Scan to know  
more about  
this topic



Natural  
Vegetation and  
Wildlife

## Types of Vegetation

- The major types of vegetation in India are tropical evergreen forests, tropical deciduous forests, tropical thorny and scrubs forests, montane forests and mangrove forests.
- Tropical evergreen forests are characterized by heavy rainfall and a warm climate. The commercially important trees grown in this area are ebony, mahogany, rosewood, rubber and cinchona. These forests also have a variety



of animals like elephants, monkey, lemur and deer and various birds, bats, sloth, scorpions and snails. These forests are restricted to heavy rainfall areas of the Western Ghats and the island groups of Lakshadweep, Andaman and Nicobar, upper parts of Assam and Tamil Nadu coast.

- Tropical deciduous forests make up most of the forest area in India. These forests depend on the Monsoon, and are also known as Monsoon forests. Rainfall in these areas ranges from 70 to 200 cm. The areas that receive between 100 and 200 cm rains are known as moist deciduous, like along the foothills of the Himalayas, Jharkhand, Western Odisha, Chhattisgarh and the eastern slopes of the Western Ghats. Commercially important trees here include teak, bamboo, sal, shisham, sandalwood, khair, kusum, arjun and mulberry. They have a long dry season followed by a season of heavy rainfall. The trees in a monsoon forest usually shed their leaves during the dry season and come into leaf at the start of the Rainy season.
- The areas that receive between 70 and 100 cm rainfall are classified as dry deciduous forests, like the plains of Bihar and Uttar Pradesh. These are sparsely populated with the teak, sal, peepal and neem trees. The animals found here are elephants, lions, tigers and deer with a variety of birds, lizards, snakes and tortoises.
- Unlike evergreen and deciduous forests, the vegetation in thorny forests and scrubs is restricted to thorn plants and scrubs due to scanty rainfall. The rainfall is below 70 cm like the semi-arid areas of Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Uttar Pradesh and Haryana.
- The stems of these plants are fleshy to conserve water for a longer period. The leaves are like thorns to minimise evaporation. Trees like the acacias, palms, euphorbias and cacti are common here, along with animals like rabbits, foxes, wolves, tigers, lions, horses and camels.
- Montane forests are found in mountainous regions primarily in Jammu and Kashmir and Arunachal Pradesh. These are very different in their make-up from other types of forests, as the temperature and soil conditions vary on different altitudes.
- The animals found here are the Kashmir stag, spotted deer, wild sheep, jack rabbit, Tibetan antelope, yak and snow leopard.
- A snow-line is the edge of the habitat, beyond which there is no vegetation due to severe weather conditions.
- The Mangrove forests are usually found in coastal areas. Mangroves are a variety of plants and trees with their roots submerged in water. Dense mangrove forests are found in the deltas of the Ganga, the Mahanadi, the Godavari, the Krishna and the Kaveri. Wild animals such as the Royal Bengal Tiger, crocodile, gharial, turtle and snake are found here.

Scan to know more about this topic



Types of Forests in India

## Wildlife and Conservation of Flora–Fauna

- India has a rich biodiversity and is home to around 1.6 million or nearly 8% of all the species of flora and fauna found in the world. India is also home to over 90,000 species of fauna, including birds, insects and land and water animals.
- Besides being the only country to have both lions and tigers in its forests, India is one of the few countries that have a habitat to support large land animals like the elephant.
- The Himalayas harbour some large land animals like the yak and the shaggy-horned wild ox found in the freezing high altitudes of Ladakh. Some rare species of wild animals include the snow leopard, the red panda, the ibex and the Himalayan brown bear.
- The wildlife in the Indian rivers, lakes and coastal areas is equally rich with various species of reptiles like crocodiles and gharials, water snakes and turtles. There are over 940 different species of fishes in India.
- In order to preserve world's biodiversity and our natural heritage, fourteen biosphere reserves have been set up in the country.
- Four have been included in the world network of biosphere reserves. They are the Sunderbans in West Bengal, the Nanda Devi in Uttarakhand, the Gulf of Mannar in Tamil Nadu and the Nilgiris spanning across Kerala, Karnataka and Tamil Nadu.
- The government also provides financial and technical support to many of the Botanical Gardens, since 1992. To protect wildlife, the Government of India has introduced Project Tiger, Project Rhino and Project Great Indian Bustard.
- In addition, there are 103 National parks and 535 Wildlife sanctuaries and Zoological gardens in India to take care of our flora and fauna. As per IUCN specifications, the species of flora and fauna can be classified as normal, extinct, endangered, vulnerable, rare or endemic.

Scan to know more about this topic



Wildlife Conservation in India National Parks



## Know the Terms

- **Natural vegetation** : A plant community that has grown naturally without human aid is called Natural vegetation.
- **Virgin vegetation** : Natural vegetation that has been left undisturbed by humans for a long time is called Virgin vegetation.
- **Biodiversity** : Biodiversity in a region typically refers to its flora and fauna.
- **Endemic species** : Virgin vegetation that is purely Indian is known as Endemic or Indigenous species.
- **Exotic plants** : Plants that have come from outside India are termed exotic plants, like some species of orchids.
- **Flora** : Flora refers to the plants of a particular region or period.
- **Fauna** : Fauna is the collective term for the species of animals in a particular region or period.
- **Monsoon forests**: These forests depend on the monsoon and are also known as tropical deciduous forests. Rainfall in these areas ranges from 70 to 200 cm.
- **Deciduous forests**: Deciduous forests are forests that are dominated by trees that lose their leaves each year. These types of forest are found in areas with warm, moist summers and fairly mild winters.
- **Coniferous forests**: They are evergreen cone-bearing trees with needle shaped leaves found between 1,600 and 3,000 metre above the sea level, e.g., pine, spruce, cedar, etc.
- **Thorny and Scrub forests**: Because of dominance of thorny trees, bushes and scrubs, they are called thorn and scrub forests. They grow in dry areas of less than 75 cm of annual rainfall.
- **Montane forests**: These are very different in their make-up from other types of forests, as the temperature and soil conditions vary on different altitudes.
- **Mangrove forests**: Mangrove forests are usually found in coastal areas. Dense mangrove forests are found in the deltas of the Ganga, Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri. Wild animals such as the Royal Bengal Tiger, crocodile, gharial, turtle and snake are found here.
- **Biosphere Reserves** : It is a forest area where all types of flora and fauna are preserved in their natural environment, e.g., Nanda Devi.
- **National Parks** : They are relatively large areas where one or several ecosystems exist and where plants and animals species, geomorphological sites and habitats are of special educative and recreational interests, e.g., Jim Corbett Park.
- **Wildlife Sanctuary** : It is similar to national park but is dedicated to protect wildlife and conserve species, e.g., Gir Lion Sanctuary.
- **Important Facts :**

Scan to know more about this topic



Suggested NCERT Online Videos

### BIOSPHERE RESERVES

S. No.	Reserves	States
1.	Nilgiris (1986)	It lies at the trijunction of Tamil Nadu, Karnataka and Kerala
2.	Nanda Devi (1988)	Uttarakhand
3.	Nokrek (1988)	Meghalaya
4.	The Great Nicobar (1989)	Lies in the Bay of Bengal
5.	Gulf of Mannar (1989)	Tamil Nadu
6.	Manas (1989)	Assam
7.	Sunderbans (1989)	West Bengal
8.	Simlipal	Odisha
9.	Pachmahi	Madhya Pradesh
10.	Dibru Saikhowa	Assam
11.	Dihang-Dibang	Arunachal Pradesh
12.	Agasthyamalai (2001)	Across Kerala and Tamil Nadu
13.	Kanchenjunga (1977)	Sikkim
14.	Achanakmar- Amarkantak (2012)	Across Madhya Pradesh and Chhattisgarh

### WILDLIFE SANCTUARIES

S. No.	State	Wildlife Sanctuary	Bird Sanctuary	National Park
1.	Rajasthan	Sariska (Camel) Ranthambore (Camel)	Bharatpur (Siberian Birds)	

2.	Jammu and Kashmir	(Kashmir Stag)		Dachigam (Bear)
3.	Uttarakhand			Rajaji
				Corbett (Tiger)
4.	Uttar Pradesh	Chandra Prabha (Elephant)		
5.	Madhya Pradesh			Kanha Kisli (Deer, Elephant)
6.	Maharashtra			Taroba (Indian Bison)
7.	Assam	Kaziranga (Rhino)		
8.	Karnataka		Ranganathitto (Birds)	
9.	Kerala	Periyar (Elephant)		
10.	Gujarat			Gir (Lions)



## (A) OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

1 Mark Each



### Stand Alone MCQs

1. Name the vegetation which does not belong to the category of Natural vegetation?

- (A) Tropical evergreen    (B) Mangrove forest  
 (C) Montane forest        (D) Horticulture

Ans. Option (D) is correct.

**Explanation:** Horticulture does not belong to the category of Natural vegetation. Horticulture is the art of cultivating plants in gardens to produce food and medicinal ingredients or for comfort and ornamental purposes.

2. In which state/UT is Dachigam National Park located?

- (A) Andhra Pradesh    (B) Himachal Pradesh  
 (C) Assam              (D) Jammu and Kashmir

Ans. Option (D) is correct.

**Explanation:** Dachigam National Park is located 22 kilometers from Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir.

3. In which state is the Sundarban Bio-reserve located?

- (A) Gujarat              (B) Kerala  
 (C) West Bengal          (D) Assam

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

**Explanation:** Sundarban Bio-reserve located in West Bengal.

4. How many types of vegetation are there in India?

- (A) 5                      (B) 8  
 (C) 3                      (D) 4

Ans. Option (A) is correct.

**Explanation:** There are five major types of vegetation found in our country. (i) Tropical Evergreen Forests, (ii) Tropical Deciduous Forests, (iii) Tropical Thorn Forests and Scrubs, (iv) Montane Forests, (v) Mangrove Forests.

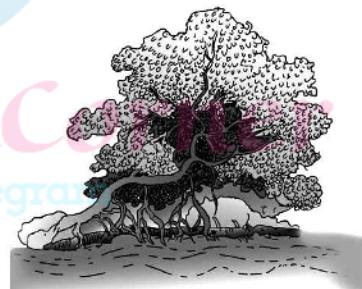
5. At which altitude can one find coniferous trees?

- (A) Between 1000 and 2000 metres  
 (B) Between 1500 and 3000 metres  
 (C) Between 2000 and 2500 metres  
 (D) Between 1000 and 3000 metres

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

**Explanation:** Between 1500 and 3000 metres, temperate forests containing coniferous trees like pine, deodar, silver fir, spruce, and cedar, are found.

6. Study the picture below and identify the type of forests:



- (A) Tropical Thorn Forest  
 (B) Tropical Deciduous Forest  
 (C) Tropical Evergreen Forest  
 (D) Mangrove Forest

Ans. Option (D) is correct.

7. In which forest can one find the most majestic mammal?

- (A) Tropical Deciduous forest  
 (B) Tropical Evergreen forest  
 (C) Mangrove forest  
 (D) Thorn forest

Ans. Option (A) is correct.

**Explanation:** In Tropical Deciduous Forests, most majestic mammals are found.

8. In which year Wildlife Protection Act was implemented in India?

- (A) 1952                  (B) 1962  
 (C) 1972                  (D) 1982



**Ans.** Option (C) is correct.

**Explanation:** The Indian Wildlife Protection Act was implemented in 1972. The main objective of this act is that to protect wild plants and wild animals.

**9. Which of the following types of vegetation grows in wet, marshy soil?**

- (A) Grasslands                  (B) Mangroves  
 (C) Cactus                      (D) Alpine vegetation

**Ans.** Option (B) is correct.

**Explanation:** The mangrove tidal forests are found in the areas of coasts influenced by tides. Mud and silt get accumulated on such coasts.

**10. One step taken by the Indian Government to conserve the forest is the setting of the Forest Research Institute at.**

- (A) Dehradun                    (B) Patlidun  
 (C) Delhi                        (D) Uttar Pradesh

**Ans.** Option (A) is correct.

**Explanation:** One step taken by the Indian Government to conserve the forest is the setting of the Forest Research Institute at Dehradun.

**11. How many types of plant species are found in India?**

- (A) About 45,000                (B) About 40,000  
 (C) About 47,000                (D) About 20,000

**Ans.** Option (C) is correct.

**Explanation:** India is one of the 12 mega biodiversity countries of the world. With about 47,000 plant species India occupies tenth place in the world and fourth in Asia in plant diversity.

**12. The yak, shaggy-horned wild ox and the Tibetan antelope are found in which region?**

- (A) Arunachal Pradesh            (B) Assam  
 (C) Uttar Pradesh                (D) Ladakh

**Ans.** Option (D) is correct.

**Explanation:** Ladakh's freezing high altitudes are a home to yak, the shaggy horned wild ox weighing around one tonne, the Tibetan antelope, the Bharal (blue sheep), wild sheep, and the Kiang (Tibetan wild ass). Further more, the ibex, bear, snow-leopard and rare red panda are found in certain pockets.

**13. Study the picture below and identify the type of forests:**



- (A) Mangrove Forest

- (B) Tropical Evergreen Forest  
 (C) Tropical Deciduous Forest  
 (D) None of the above.

**Ans.** Option (D) is correct.

**Explanation:** The above image is The Thorn Forests and Scrubs. In regions with less than 70 cm of rainfall, the natural vegetation consists of thorny trees and bushes.

**14. Which term is used to denote animal species of a particular region or period?**

- (A) Fauna                        (B) Ferns  
 (C) Flora                        (D) None of these

**Ans.** Option (A) is correct.

**Explanation:** The term flora is used to denote plants of a particular region or period. Similarly, the species of animals are referred to as fauna.

**15. Which is not included in the group of non-flowering plants?**

- (A) Orchids                      (B) Algae  
 (C) Fungi                        (D) None of these

**Ans.** Option (A) is correct.

**Explanation:** Orchids are not included in the group of non-flowering plants cultivated crops and fruits, orchards form part of vegetation but not natural vegetation.

### Assertion and Reason Based MCQs

**Directions :** In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as :

- (A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).  
 (B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).  
 (C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.  
 (D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

**1. Assertion (A) :** Evergreen forests are found in the Western Ghats, Lakshadweep Islands, Andaman and Nicobar Islands, upper parts of Assam and on Tamil Nadu coast.

**Reason (R) :** As the region is warm and wet throughout the year, it has a luxuriant vegetation of all kinds – trees, shrubs and creepers giving it a multilayered structure.

**Ans.** Option (A) is correct.

**2. Assertion (A) :** India's natural vegetation has undergone many changes recently.

**Reason (R) :** Climatic factors include temperature, humidity in air, precipitation and soil available in the different parts of the country.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Pollution due to chemical and industrial waste, acid deposits, introduction of alien species and reckless cutting of the forests to bring land under cultivation and habitation, are also responsible for the imbalance.

**3. Assertion(A) :** Teak is the most dominant species of Tropical Evergreen Forests.

**Reason (R) :** Bamboos, sal, shisham, sandalwood, khair, kusum, arjun and mulberry are other commercially important species.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Teak is the most dominant species of Tropical deciduous forest. Bamboos, sal, shisham, sandalwood, khair, kusum, arjun and mulberry are other commercially important species.

**4. Assertion (A) :** Royal Bengal Tiger is the famous animal in Mangrove Forests.

**Reason (R) :** Mangrove Forests are found in the north-western part of the country, including semi-arid areas of Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Uttar Pradesh, and Haryana.

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The deltas of the Ganga, the Mahanadi, the Krishna, the Godavari and the Kaveri are covered by Mangrove Forests.

**5. Assertion (A) :** Bird life in India is colourful.

**Reason (R) :** Peacocks, pheasants, ducks, parakeets, cranes and pigeons are some of the birds inhabiting the forests and wetlands of the country.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Bird life in India is colourful. Peacocks, pheasants, ducks, parakeets, cranes and pigeons are some of the birds inhabiting the forests and wetlands of the country. Some of the wetlands of India are popular with migratory birds. During winter, birds, such as Siberian Crane, come in large numbers. One such place favourable with birds is the Rann of Kutch.

**6. Assertion (A) :** About 1,300 plant species are endangered and 20 species are extinct.

**Reason (R) :** One of the main cause for this major threat to nature is hunting by greedy hunters for commercial purposes.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Quite a few animal species are also endangered and some have become extinct. The main cause for this major threat to nature is hunting by greedy hunters for commercial purposes. Pollution due to chemical and industrial waste, acid deposits, introduction of alien species and reckless cutting of the forests to bring land under cultivation and habitation, are also responsible for the imbalance.



### Case-based MCQs

**A. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow :**

Our country India is one of the 12 mega biodiversity countries of the world. With about 47,000 plant species, India occupies tenth place in the world and fourth in Asia in plant diversity. There are about 15,000 flowering plants in India, which account for 6 per cent in the world's total number of flowering plants. The country has many non-flowering plants, such as ferns, algae and fungi. India also has approximately 90,000 species of animals, as well as, a rich variety of fish in its fresh and marine waters.

Natural vegetation refers to a plant community, which has grown naturally without human aid and has been left undisturbed by humans for a long time. This is termed as virgin vegetation. Thus, cultivated crops and fruits, orchards form part of vegetation but not natural vegetation.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option.

**1. India occupies ..... place in the world and ..... place in Asia in plant diversity.**

- (A) fifth, third      (B) fourth, second  
 (C) tenth, fourth    (D) third, second

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** With about 47,000 plant species, India occupies tenth place in the world and fourth in Asia in plant diversity.

**2. Ferns, Algae and Fungi are type of:**

- (A) Flowering Plants  
 (B) Microbes  
 (C) Bacteria  
 (D) Non-Flowering Plants

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The country has many non-flowering plants, such as ferns, algae and fungi.

**3. Cultivated crops and fruits, orchards form part of ..... but not natural vegetation.**

- (A) Vegetation      (B) plantation  
 (C) grasslands     (D) Flora

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Natural vegetation refers to a plant community, which has grown naturally without human aid and has been left undisturbed by humans for a long time. This is termed as virgin vegetation. Thus, cultivated crops and fruits, orchards form part of vegetation but not natural vegetation.

**4. Plants that have come from outside India are termed as:**

- (A) Endemic plants  
 (B) Indigenous plants  
 (C) Exotic plants    (D) Imported plants

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**



**B. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:**

Like its flora, India is also rich in its fauna. It has approximately 90,000 animal species. The country has about 2,000 species of birds. They constitute 13% of the world's total. There are 2,546 species of fish, which account for nearly 12% of the world's stock. It also shares between 5 and 8 per cent of the world's Amphibians, Reptiles and Mammals.

The Elephants are the most majestic animals among the mammals. They are found in the hot wet forests of Assam, Karnataka and Kerala. One-horned rhinoceroses are the other animals, which live in swampy and marshy land of Assam and West Bengal. Arid areas of the Rann of Kachchh and the Thar Desert are the habitat for wild ass and camels respectively. Indian Bison, Nilgai (Blue Bull), Chousingha (Four-horned Antelope), Gazelle and different species of deer are some other animals found in India. also has several species of Monkeys.

India is the only country in the world that has both Tigers and Lions. The natural habitat of the Indian lion is the Gir forest in Gujarat. Tigers are found in the forests of Madhya Pradesh, the Sunderbans of West Bengal and the Himalayan region. Leopards, too, are members of the cat family. They are important among animals of prey.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option.

**1. How many animal species are there?**

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| (A) 70,000 | (B) 80,000 |
| (C) 60,000 | (D) 90,000 |

Ans. Option (D) is correct.

*Explanation:* Like its flora, India is also rich in its fauna. It has approximately 90,000 animal species.

**2. Fish account to nearly ..... of the World's stock.**

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| (A) 14% | (B) 12% |
| (C) 11% | (D) 15% |

Ans. Option (B) is correct.

*Explanation:* There are 2,546 species of fish, which account for nearly 12% of the World's stock.

**3. Which animal is found in hot-wet forests of Assam, Karnataka and Kerala?**

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| (A) Elephant | (B) Tiger   |
| (C) Deer     | (D) Giraffe |

Ans. Option (A) is correct.

*Explanation:* The Elephants are the most majestic animals among the mammals. They are found in the hot wet forests of Assam, Karnataka and Kerala.

**4. The natural habitat of the Indian Lion Gir is in \_\_\_\_\_.**

- |                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| (A) Rajasthan   | (B) Madhya Pradesh |
| (C) Maharashtra | (D) Gujarat        |

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

*Explanation:* The natural habitat of the Indian lion is the Gir forest in Gujarat.

**C. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:**

In mountainous areas, the decrease in temperature with increasing altitude leads to the corresponding change in natural vegetation. As such, there is a succession of natural vegetation belts in the same order as we see from the tropical to the Tundra region. The wet temperate type of forests are found between a height of 1000 and 2000 metres. Evergreen broad-leaf trees, such as oaks and chestnuts predominate. Between 1500 and 3000 metres, temperate forests containing coniferous trees, like pine, deodar, silver fir, spruce and cedar, are found. These forests cover mostly the southern slopes of the Himalayas, places having high altitude in southern and north-east India. At higher elevations, Temperate Grasslands are common. At high altitudes, generally, more than 3,600 metres above the sea level, temperate forests and grasslands give way to the Alpine vegetation. Silver fir, junipers, pines and birches are the common trees of these forests. However, they get progressively stunted as they approach the snow-line. Ultimately, through shrubs and scrubs, they merge into the Alpine grasslands. These are used extensively for grazing by nomadic tribes, like the Gujjars and the Bakarwals. At higher altitudes, mosses and lichens form part of tundra vegetation.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option :

**1. Pine, deodar, silver fir, spruce and cedar, are \_\_\_\_\_ trees.**

- |                                 |
|---------------------------------|
| (A) Evergreen broad-leaf trees. |
| (B) Mangrove trees              |
| (C) Tropical Deciduous trees    |
| (D) Coniferous trees            |

Ans. Option (D) is correct.

*Explanation:* Between 1500 and 3000 metres, temperate forests containing coniferous trees, like pine, deodar, silver fir, spruce and cedar, are found.

**2. At high altitudes, generally, more than 3,600 metres above the sea level, Temperate forests and Grasslands give way to the \_\_\_\_\_ .**

- |                        |
|------------------------|
| (A) Alpine vegetation  |
| (B) virgin vegetation  |
| (C) Scrubs             |
| (D) None of the above. |

Ans. Option (A) is correct.

*Explanation:* At high altitudes, generally, more than 3,600 metres above the sea level, Temperate forests and grasslands give way to the Alpine vegetation. Silver fir, junipers, pines and birches are the common trees of these forests.



3. Gujjars and the Bakarwals are the nomadic tribes of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) Alpine grasslands    (B) Desert areas  
 (C) Western India        (D) Eastern India

Ans. Option (A) is correct.

**Explanation:** Through shrubs and scrubs, they merge into the Alpine grasslands. These are used extensively for grazing by nomadic tribes, like the Gujjars and the Bakarwals.

4. Between a height of 1000 and 2000 metres \_\_\_\_\_ type of forests are found.  
 (A) Tundra                  (B) Alpine  
 (C) wet temperate        (D) Thorny

Ans. Option (C) is correct.

**Explanation:** The wet temperate type of forests are found between a height of 1000 and 2000 metres.



## (B) SUBJECTIVE QUESTIONS



### Short Answer Type Questions

(3 Marks Each)

- Q. 1. What is natural vegetation? List down the four major types of vegetations identified in India. [U] (Board Term II, 2017)

Ans. Natural vegetation is the plant community growing naturally without human aid and has been left undisturbed by humans for a long time. Following are the major types of vegetation identified in our country:

- (i) Tropical rain forests
  - (ii) Tropical deciduous forests
  - (iii) Tropical thorn forests
  - (iv) Montane forests
  - (v) Mangrove forests
- (Any four)  $(1 + \frac{1}{2} \times 4 = 3)$

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017]

- Q. 2. How does relief affect the flora and fauna of any region? [A] (Board Term II, 2016)

Ans. (i) Relief in a region includes the land and the soil type found there.

(ii) Land affects the natural vegetation directly and indirectly. The fertile level is generally devoted to agriculture. The undulating and rough terrains are areas where grassland and woodlands develop and give shelter to a variety of wild life.

(iii) The soils also vary over space. Different types of soils provide basis for different types of vegetation. The sandy soil of the desert supports cactus and thorny bushes while; wet marshy, deltaic soil support mangroves and deltaic vegetation. The hill slopes with some depth of soil have conical trees.

(1 × 3 = 3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students do not provide proper definition of the term 'Relief'.

#### Answering Tip

- Variation in relief due to geographical locations should be explained and its related terms such as land and soil also be explained in context to the relief only.

- Q. 3. How do climatic factors influence the vegetation cover of India? Explain. [U]

(Board Term II, 2016)

Ans. (i) The character and extent of vegetation are mainly determined by temperature, along with humidity in the air, precipitation and soil. On the slopes of the Himalayas and the hills of the Peninsular Plateau above the height of 915 metres, the fall in the temperature affects the types of vegetation and its growth and changes it from Tropical to Subtropical, Temperate and Alpine vegetation.

(ii) The variation in duration of sunlight at different places is because of the differences in latitude, altitude, season and duration of the day. Because of the longer duration of sunlight, trees grow faster in summer.

(iii) In India, the entire rainfall is brought in by the advancing southwest monsoon (June–September) and retreating northwest Monsoon. Areas of heavy rainfall have more dense vegetation as compared to other areas with less rainfall.

(1 × 3 = 3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students mention the vegetation as per the different seasons in India.

#### Answering Tip

- Climatic factors include temperature, humidity in air, precipitation and soil available in the different parts of the country.

- Q. 4. Describe Natural vegetation and distinguish between Flora and Fauna. [A]

(Board Term II, 2013) (NCERT)

Ans. (i) Natural vegetation refers to a plant community which has grown naturally without human aid and has been left undisturbed by humans for a long time. This is termed as Virgin vegetation.

(ii) Thus, cultivated crops and fruit orchards form a part of Vegetation, but not Natural vegetation.

(iii) The term Flora is used to denote plants of a particular region or period. Similarly, the species of animals are referred to as Fauna. (1 × 3 = 3)

- Q. 5. Why has India's Natural vegetation undergone many changes in the recent past? Explain. [U]

(Board Term II, 2012)



**Ans.** India's Natural vegetation has undergone many changes due to several reasons :

- (i) Growing demand for cultivation requires more land for which forests are cleared.
  - (ii) Development of industries requires more transportation and raw materials for which forests are cut down.
  - (iii) To extract minerals, forests are cleared up and minerals are obtained.
  - (iv) Increasing urbanisation and overgrazing of pastures.
- (Any three) (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012]

**Q. 6.** A great variety of Flora is found in India. Give three geographical factors responsible for this diversification of Flora. U

(Board Term II, 2011)

**OR**

India has huge diversity of Flora and Fauna. Explain three main factors responsible for it.

(Board Term I, 2011)

**Ans.** Factors responsible for huge diversity of Flora and Fauna:

- (i) **Land:** Nature of land influences the type of vegetation. For example, land for agriculture and undulating land for forests.
  - (ii) **Soil:** Different types of soils provide basis for different vegetation.
  - (iii) **Temperature:** Vegetation differs from low to high temperature.
  - (iv) **Precipitation:** Heavy rainfall supports dense vegetation compared to areas of low rainfall.
- (Any three) (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011]

**Q. 7.** What types of Flora and Fauna are found in Tropical Rain forests? Describe. A

(Board 2016, Term II)

**Ans.** **Flora:** Economically important trees like ebony mahogany, rosewood, rubber, cinchona are found here.

**Fauna:** Elephants, monkeys, lemur, deer, rhinoceros, plenty of birds, bats, sloths, scorpions and snails are also found. (1½ + 1½ = 3)

**Q. 8.** Write any three features of Dry Deciduous forests. U

(Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** (i) The Dry Deciduous forests are found in areas having rainfall between 70 cm and 100 cm.

(ii) These forests are found in the rainier parts of the peninsular plateau and the plains of Bihar and U.P.

(iii) They are open stretches in which teak, sal, peepal and neem grow. (1×3=3)

**A** Q. 9. Distinguish between Tropical Deciduous and Tropical Evergreen forests. R

(Board Term II, 2016, KVS, NCERT)

(Board Term II, 2011, 2012)

**OR**

Compare features of Tropical Evergreen forests and Tropical Deciduous forests. (Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.**

S. No.	Tropical Deciduous	Tropical Evergreen
(i)	Rainfall between 70 cm and 200 cm.	Heavy rainfall.
(ii)	Trees shed their leaves during summer season.	No fixed time to shed their leaves.
(iii)	Example : Sal, Teak.	Example: Ebony, Mahogany.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011] (1×3=3)

**Q. 10.** Distinguish between Moist Deciduous and Dry Deciduous forests. R (Board Term-II, 2016)

**OR**

Mention the sub-types of Tropical Deciduous forests. State any two features of each type also.

(Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.**

S. No.	Moist Deciduous	Dry Deciduous
(i)	They are found in areas where rainfall is between 100 to 200 cm.	They are found in areas of lower rainfall, i.e., 70 to 100 cm.
(ii)	They cover the eastern slopes of the Western Ghats, Shiwaliks, Jharkhand, West Odisha, Chhattisgarh, etc.	They cover rainier parts of the peninsular plateau and the western Ganga plains.
(iii)	They provide better and more valuable timber.	They are less important for commercial exploitation.
(iv)	Eg: Teak and sal trees, bamboo and shisham.	Eg: Sal is the most important tree and others are sandalwood, peepal and neem.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1×3=3)

**Q. 11.** Compare the Wildlife of the Tropical Rainforest, with that of the Tropical Deciduous forests. U

(Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** The Tropical Rainforests are the Evergreen forests having thick luxuriant vegetation that is habitat to a variety of wildlife. The common animals of these forests are Elephants, Monkey, Lemur and Deer. It is also home to One-horned Rhinoceros, bats, variety of Birds, Sloths, Scorpions and Snails. The Tropical Deciduous forests or the Monsoon forests support a different variety of animals like Lion, Tiger, Pig, Deer, Lizards, Snakes and Tortoise.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] 3

**Q.12. Describe the climatic conditions of Tropical Deciduous Forests.** A (Board 2015)

**Ans.** (i) Climate of Tropical Deciduous Forests is influenced by the Monsoons.

(ii) These forests are found in regions receiving rainfall between 70 cm and 200 cm.

(iii) Trees in these forests shed their leaves for 6–8 weeks in dry summer, to conserve moisture.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] (1×3=3)

**Q. 13. Which animals are found in the Montane Forests? Name any six.** R (Board Term II, 2015)

**Ans.** The common animals found in these forests are the Kashmir stag, spotted deer, wild sheep, jack rabbit, Tibetan antelope, yak, snow leopard, squirrels, shaggy horn wild ibex, bear and rare red panda, sheep and goats with thick hair.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] (½×6=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students were unable to write the names of animals found in Montane Forests.

#### Answering Tip

- Firstly students have to understand the term montane forest then we easily make ideas of the animal found in these forest areas.

**Q. 14. Which forest is the most widespread forest in India? What is its other name? Give examples of any two species of trees of these forests.** R (Board Term II, 2013)

**Ans.** The most widespread forest of India is the Tropical Deciduous Forest. It is also called Monsoon Forest. The most common trees of this forest are Teak, Sal, Shisham, Bamboo, Sandalwood, Khair, Kusum, Arjun and Mulberry. (1+1+1=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013]

**Q. 15. Write any three characteristics of the Thorny Forests and Scrubs.** U (Board Term II, 2013, 2012)  
OR

In which regions are the Thorny Forests and Scrubs found in India? Mention any two characteristics of such type of vegetation. (Board Term II, 2011)

#### Ans. Features of Tropical Thorny Forests and Scrubs :

These forests occur in areas which have less than 70 cm of rainfall annually.

They are found in the North-western parts of the country including semi-arid areas of Rajasthan, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh and Haryana.

(i) The commonly found trees in these forests are short, stunted and scattered.

(ii) Besides acacia (Babool), date, palms, euphorbias and cactus trees, different shrubs and grasses commonly grow between these trees.

(iii) In these forests, the common animals are goats, wild ass, horses, camels, wolves, tigers, lions, etc. (Any two) (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013]

**Q. 16. Where are Evergreen Forests found in India? Name any two regions. Give any two characteristics of these forests.** A

(Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.** Evergreen forests are found in the Western Ghats, Lakshadweep Islands, Andaman and Nicobar Islands, upper parts of Assam and on Tamil Nadu coast.

#### Characteristics of these forests :

- The trees reach great heights up to 60 meter or even above.
- As the region is warm and wet throughout the year, it has a luxuriant vegetation of all kinds – trees, shrubs and creepers giving it a multilayered structure.
- There is no definite time for trees to shed their leaves, as such these forests appear green all year round. (Any two) (1+2=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011]

**Q. 17. What are the main characteristics of Tropical Rain Forests?** R (Board Term II, 2011)

#### Ans. Characteristics of Tropical Rain Forests :

- They are wet evergreen forests.
- They are found in areas having hot and humid climate.
- Trees of these forests are tall, thick and have vigorous growth.
- Trees have hardwood and have large number of species.
- Trees of particular species are highly scattered. (Any three) (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011]

#### Commonly Made Error

- Evergreen forests and tropical rain forests are taken to be different types of forests.

#### Answering Tip

- Regions for Tropical Rain Forests should be mentioned.

**Q. 18. Write three main characteristics of Tropical Deciduous Forests.** U

(Board Term II, 2011)

#### Ans. Features of Tropical Deciduous Forests :

(i) These forests are found on the foothills of the Himalayas, North-eastern states, Jharkhand, West Odisha, Chhattisgarh and eastern slopes of the Western Ghats.

(ii) During the dry season, the trees in these forests shed their leaves.

(iii) These forests have teak, shisham, sal, sandalwood, as well as thick undergrowth of shrubs and bamboo.

(iv) These forests are also economically very significant for India.

(v) The common animals found in these forests are lions, tigers, elephants, deer, tortoise, pigs and a great variety of birds and insects. (Any three)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011] (1×3=3)



**Q. 19.** Name the vegetation found at high altitude in our country and mention the animals which are found in this region. **R** (Board Term II, 2011) (NCERT)

**Ans.** Montane forests are found at high altitudes in our country. These forests are Wet Temperate types.

(i) Trees found in these forests are deodar, fir, cedar (1500–3000 m). Silver fir and junipers (one found at a height of more than 3600 m above sea level).

(ii) Animals found in these forests are spotted deer, wild sheep, jack rabbit, yak, etc.

(iii) Its regions include slopes of the Himalayas and North-East India. **(1×3=3)**

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011]

**Q. 20.** In which part of India Mangrove forests are found? Mention two characteristics of these forests. **U** (Board Term II, 2013)

**OR**

Explain any three characteristics of the Mangrove forests. **(Board 2012, Term II)**

**Ans.** Refer to Ans. of Q. 3 Long Answer Type Questions. **(Any three) (1×3=3)**

**Q. 21.** What is a Bio-reserve? Mention its main objectives. **U** (Board Term-II, 2017)

**OR**

What are Bio-reserves? Why are they created? **(Board Term II, 2012)**

**OR**

What is a Bio-reserve? For what purpose have Bio-reserve been set up in a country? Name any two Bio-reserves along with the states where they are situated. **U** (Board Term II, 2011)

**OR**

What is a Bio-reserve? Give two examples. **(NCERT)**

**Ans.** A protected area reserved for the conservation of endangered species of Flora and Fauna in their natural habitat is called a Bio-reserve.

**Purposes:**

- (i) In Biosphere reserve, endangered species of animals and plants are protected.
- (ii) This important heritage of plants and animals is transmitted to the future generations in all its natural vigour and glory.
- (iii) The surrounding areas are reserved for research work for the betterment of Flora and Fauna.

#### Bio-Reserve

#### State

(a) Nanda Devi	Uttarakhand
(b) Nokrek	Meghalaya
(c) Manas	Assam
(d) Sunderban	West Bengal
(e) Simlipal	Odisha
(f) Pachmahi	Madhya Pradesh

(Any two) **(1+1+1=3)**

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012]

**Q. 22.** Explain any three factors responsible for the rich diversity of Fauna in India. **U**

(Board Term II, 2017)

**Ans.** India has rich variety of Fauna because of the following reasons :

- (i) Vast area of India.
- (ii) Variation in climate.
- (iii) Variety of vegetation regions providing habitat to a variety of species.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017] **(1×3=3)**

**Q. 23.** Explain any three factors responsible for the loss of Wild resources in our country. **U**

(Board Term II, Modified, 2016)  
**OR**

**Q. 24.** Analyse any three reasons for the extinction of a few animal species. **(Board Term II, 2012)**

**OR**

Explain any three major threats to the Rich Biodiversity of India.

**Ans.** The three major threats to the Rich Biodiversity of India are :

- (i) **Hunting** : The main causes for this major threat to nature are hunting by greedy hunters for commercial purposes.
- (ii) **Industrial Waste** : Pollution due to chemical and industrial waste, acid deposits pose a threat to bio diversity.
- (iii) **Deforestation** : Reckless cutting of the forests to bring land under cultivation and habitation also causes damage to the Biodiversity. **(1 × 3 = 3)**

**Q. 25.** What is Kiang? Where is it found in India? Name any two other animals found with Kiang. **R**

(Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** (i) Kiang is a Tibetan Ass.

(ii) It is found in Ladakh and Himalayas.

(iii) The two other animals found with Kiang are Tibetan antelope, the Bharal (blue sheep), wild sheep. **(1+1+1=3)**

**Q. 26.** Which wild animal is considered to be the most majestic among the Mammals? In which region of India are they found? **R** (Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** The Elephants are the most majestic animals among the Mammals. They are found in the Hot Wet Deserts of Assam, Karnataka and Kerala.

**Q. 27.** How many Bio-reserves have been set up in our Country? Name the bio-reserves that have been included in the world network of Bio-reserves. **(Board Term II, 2016)**

**OR**

What are the steps taken by the Government to protect Flora and Fauna in India? Write any three.

**A** [Board Term II, 2011]

**Ans.** The following steps are taken by the Government to protect the Flora and Fauna of the Country :

- (i) Wildlife Protection Act was implemented in 1972 in India.
- (ii) Fourteen Biosphere Reserves have been set up in the country to protect flora and fauna. Four out of these – Sundarbans in West Bengal, Nanda Devi in Uttarakhand, the Gulf of Mannar in Tamil Nadu and the Nilgiris – have been included in the World Network of Biosphere Reserves.

- (iii) Financial and technical assistance is provided to many Botanical gardens by the government since 1992.
  - (iv) Project Tiger, Project Rhino, Project Great Indian Bustard and many other Eco-developmental Projects have been introduced.
  - (v) Total 89 national parks, 490 Wildlife Sanctuaries and Zoological Gardens are set up to take care of Natural Heritage. **(Any Three) (1 × 3 = 3)**
- [CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]**

**Note:** For detailed answer refer to Ans. 5 Long Answer Type Questions.

**Q. 27. "India is rich in its Fauna". Explain the statement with examples.** [A]

**(Board Term II, 2016)**

**Ans.** The species of animals of a particular region or period is referred to as fauna. Like its flora, India is also rich in its Fauna. It has approximately 90,000 of Animal species. The Country has near about 2,000 species of birds. They constitute 13 per cent of the world's total. There are 2,546 species of fish, which account for nearly 12 per cent of the world's stock. It also shares between 5 and 8 percent of the World's Amphibians, Reptiles and Mammals.

#### Commonly Made Error

- The students don't often discuss the large variety to show the wide range of Fauna.

#### Answering Tip

- Firstly, students have to define what is Fauna, thereafter, mention specific details about Fauna.



### Long Answer Type Questions

**(5 Marks Each)**

**Q. 1. Describe any five characteristic features of Tropical Rain Forests of India.** [A]  
**(Board Term II, 2016)**

**Ans. The characteristics of the Tropical Rain Forests of India :**

- (i) Tropical Rain Forests are restricted to heavy rainfall areas of India.
- (ii) They are at their best in areas having more than 200 cm of rainfall with a short dry season.
- (iii) The trees found in these forests reach great heights up to 60 metres or even above.
- (iv) Since the region is warm and wet throughout the year, it has luxuriant vegetation of all kinds: trees, shrubs and creepers giving it a multilayered structure.
- (v) There is no definite time for trees to shed their leaves.
- (vi) As such, these forests appear green all the year round.
- (vii) Some of the commercially important trees of this forest are ebony, mahogany, rosewood, rubber and cinchona.

- (viii) The common animals found in these forests are elephant, monkey, lemur and deer.

**(Any five) (1×5=5)**  
**(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016)**

#### Commonly Made Error

- The students don't understand the characteristic of the rain forest being an evergreen forest and the features associated with it.

#### Answering Tip

- Tropical rain forest is equivalent to areas with rainfall. Discuss the types of trees, climate and animals found in this vegetation.

**Q. 2. Describe any five features of Montane Forests of India.** [A] (Board Term II, 2016)

#### Ans. Features of Montane Forests :

- (i) In mountain areas, the decrease in temperature with increasing altitude leads to a corresponding change in natural vegetation, thus, making a succession of Natural vegetation belts.
- (ii) The wet temperate type of forests are found between a height of 1000 and 2000 metres.
- (iii) Evergreen broad leaf trees such as oaks and chestnuts predominate.
- (iv) Between 1500 and 3000 metres, Temperate forests containing coniferous trees like pine, deodar, silver fir, spruce and cedar are found.
- (v) These forests cover mostly the southern slopes of the Himalayas, places at high altitude in southern and North-east India.
- (vi) At higher elevations, Temperate Grasslands are common.
- (vii) At high altitudes, generally more than 3600 metres above sea level, Temperate Forests and Grasslands give way to the Alpine vegetation.
- (viii) Silver fir, junipers, pines and birches are the common trees of these forests.
- (ix) These get progressively stunted as they approach the snow-line, ultimately merging into the Alpine grasslands.
- (x) At higher altitudes, mosses and lichens form part of Tundra vegetation.
- (xi) The common animals found in these forests are Kashmir stag, spotted deer, wild sheep, jack rabbit, Tibetan antelope, yak, snow leopard, squirrels, shaggy horn wild ibex, bear, rare red panda, sheep and goats with thick hair. **(Any five)**

**[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] 1×5=5**

#### Commonly Made Error

- The students do not provide correct data pertaining to the location of the forests.

#### Answering Tip

- In mountainous areas, the decrease in temperature with increasing altitude leads to the corresponding change in Natural vegetation as well as location of the forests.

**Q. 3. Give a brief description of the Mangrove Forests.****A (Board Term II, 2015)**

- Ans.** (i) The Mangrove Tidal Forests are found in the areas of coasts influenced by tides.
- (ii) Dense Mangroves are the common varieties with roots of plants submerged under water.
- (iii) The deltas of the Ganga, Mahanadi, Kaveri and Krishna are covered with such vegetation.
- (iv) In the Ganga-Brahmaputra Delta, Sundari trees are found which provide durable hard timber.
- (v) Palm, coconut, keora, agar, also grow in some parts of the delta.
- (vi) The Royal Bengal Tiger is the most famous animal in these forests. Turtles, crocodiles, gharials and snakes are also found in these forests. (Any five)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] (1×5=5)

**Q. 4. Why is Biodiversity necessary? Why should it be conserved?****A (Board Term II, 2015)**

- Ans.** Biodiversity in a region typically refers to its Flora and Fauna. It should be conserved because :
- (i) We have selected our crops from a Bio- diverse Environment of edible plants.
- (ii) Animals from large stock provided by nature as Milch animal.
- (iii) Animals and birds also provided us draught power, transportation, meat, eggs.
- (iv) First it provides nutritive food and insects help in pollination of crops and fruit trees and exert biological control on such insects which are harmful.
- (v) Every species has a role to play in the Ecosystem. Hence, conservation is essential.
- (vi) Excessive exploitation of plants and animal resources by humans has disturbed Ecosystem endangering many species. (Any five) (1+5=5)

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015)

**Q. 5. Explain any three measures undertaken by the Government to protect and conserve the Flora and Fauna of our Country.****R (Board Term II, 2013)****OR**

**Describe the five measures that have been taken by the Government to conserve our Wildlife and varied Fauna.**

**(Board Term II, 2012)**

- Ans.** (i) Various Biosphere Reserves have been set up in various parts of India where wild animals and birds are kept in their natural habitat. Nilgiris at the junction of Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and Kerala, and Nanda Devi in Uttarakhand are such Biosphere Reserves.

- (ii) Government has made 103 National Parks, 535 Wildlife Sanctuaries and Zoological Gardens to protect Wildlife.

(iii) Periodic census is being taken to find out the latest position of some rare species so that they can be preserved for our future generations.

(iv) Tigers and rhinoceros are some Endangered species of Wildlife in India, so for them Special Projects have been prepared. Project Tiger has proved to be very successful. About 51 tiger reserves have been set up in different parts of India.

Likewise Project Rhino is also being implemented in the Kaziranga Bird Reserve of Assam.

(v) The killing of wildlife has been banned by the government. Special Forest Officers have been appointed to catch unlawful animal hunters.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013] (1×5=5)

**Q. 6. What type of dangers does the Wildlife Sanctuaries of India face? How can they be protected better? Write a brief note on each.****U (Board Term II, 2011)**

**Ans.** 535 Wildlife Sanctuaries have been set up in India to protect and conserve Wildlife. The Government has demarcated them and maintains them. But certain external factors and loopholes in internal management of these areas create problems and affect their purpose. Dangers faced by Wildlife Sanctuaries of India are as follows :

- (i) Poaching or illegal killing of animals for trade of their hides, skins, tusk, horns and bones.
- (ii) Hunting of animals for game.
- (iii) Killing of animals by villagers in instances of migration of animals to inhabited areas during floods. In North Bengal, often elephants move out from the forests to cultivated fields and are killed by the villagers.
- (iv) Shortage of trained personnel to take care of the animals within the sanctuaries. This leads to death of sick animals.
- (v) Shortage of funds for Management of the Sanctuaries.

**The wildlife sanctuaries can be protected better in the following ways :**

- (i) Strict vigilance of the areas within the Sanctuaries.
- (ii) Enforcing strict measures against people encroaching the Wildlife Sanctuaries without proper permission.
- (iii) Making laws against poaching and hunting more strict and punishing people who dare to destroy the sanctity of the Wildlife Sanctuaries.
- (iv) Training the personnel to take proper care of animals within the Wildlife Sanctuary.
- (v) Creating a proper, protected boundary for the Wildlife Sanctuaries.
- (vi) Creating public awareness regarding the need of Wildlife Sanctuaries. (2½+2½=5)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011]

# MAP WORK-GEOGRAPHY

## Chapter 3: Drainage

### Rivers

Q. 1. (a) For identification only : Lakes-

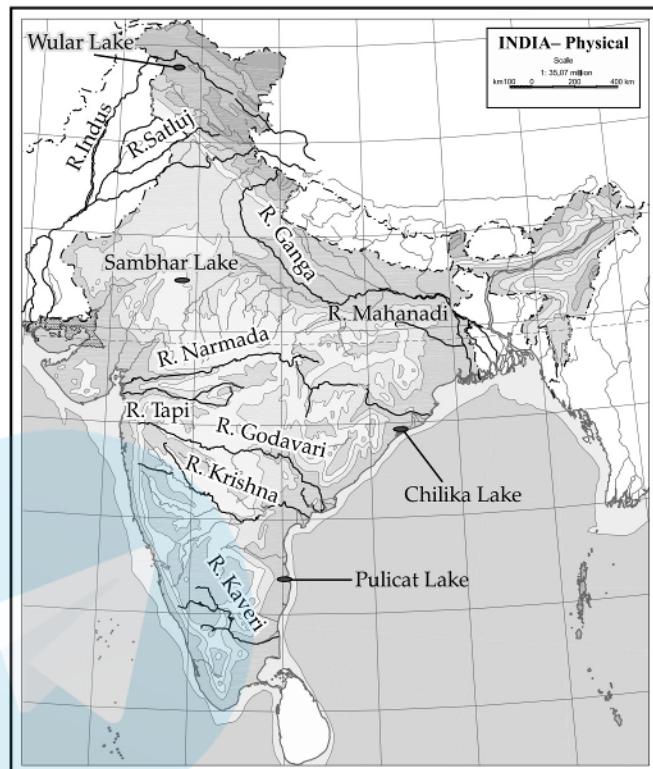
Chilika (NCERT); Pulicat (NCERT); Sambhar (NCERT); Wular.

[Board 2016 Term-I, 2014]

(b) For identification only : Rivers-

Tapi (NCERT); Ganga (NCERT); Satluj (NCERT); Narmada (NCERT); Indus (DDE-2014); Mahanadi (NCERT); Godavari, Krishna (NCERT); Kaveri (NCERT). [Board 2016 Term-I, 2014]

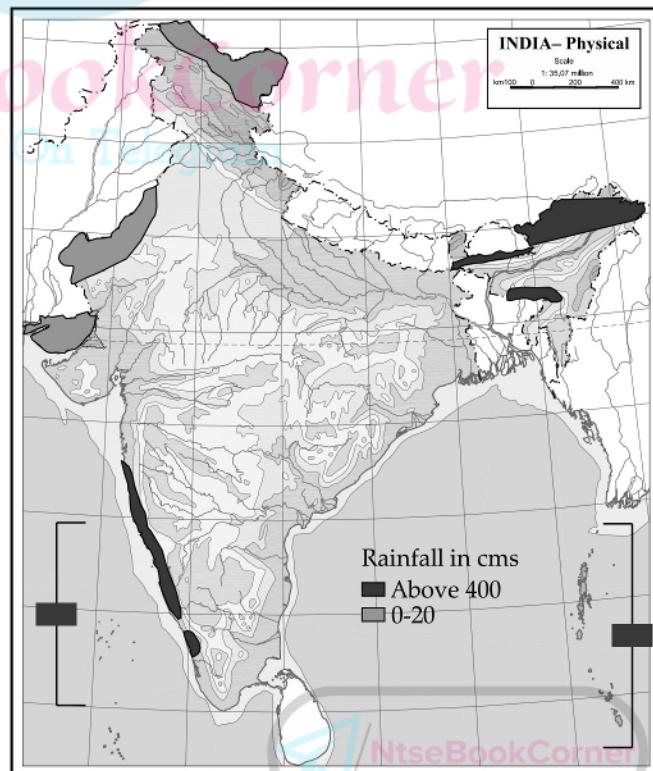
Ans.



## Chapter 4: Climate

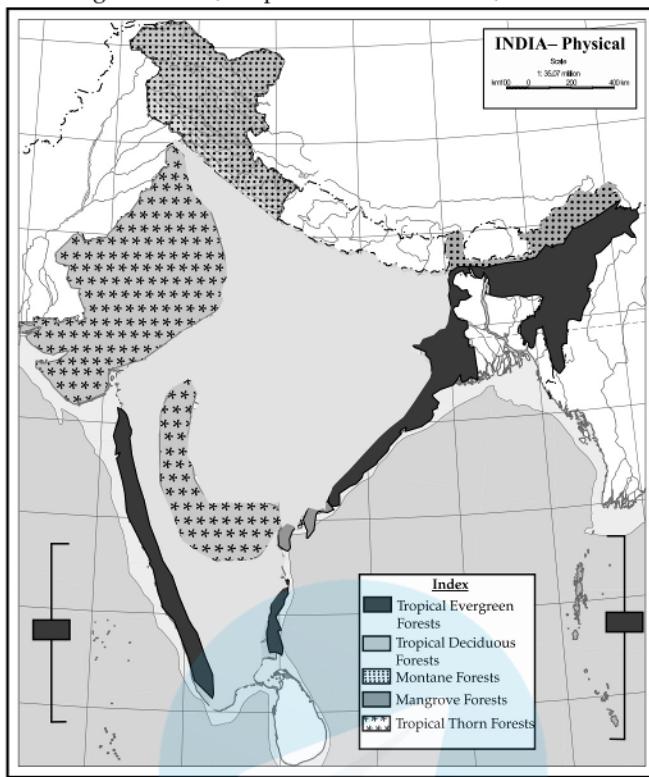
Q. 2. Annual Rainfall (Identification Only).

Ans. Area receiving rainfall less than 20 cm and over 400 cm (Identification only)



**Q. 3. Natural Vegetation.**

**Ans.** Vegetation type : Tropical evergreen forest, Tropical Deciduous forest, Thorn forest Montane forest and Mangrove

**Q. 4. National Parks**

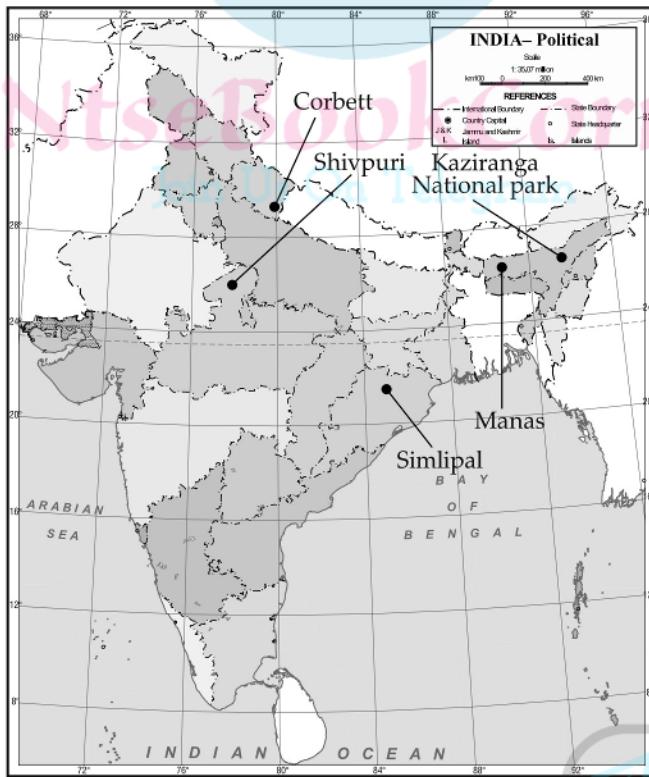
Corbett,  
Kanha,

**Ans.**

Kaziranga,  
Simlipal

Ranthambor,  
Manas

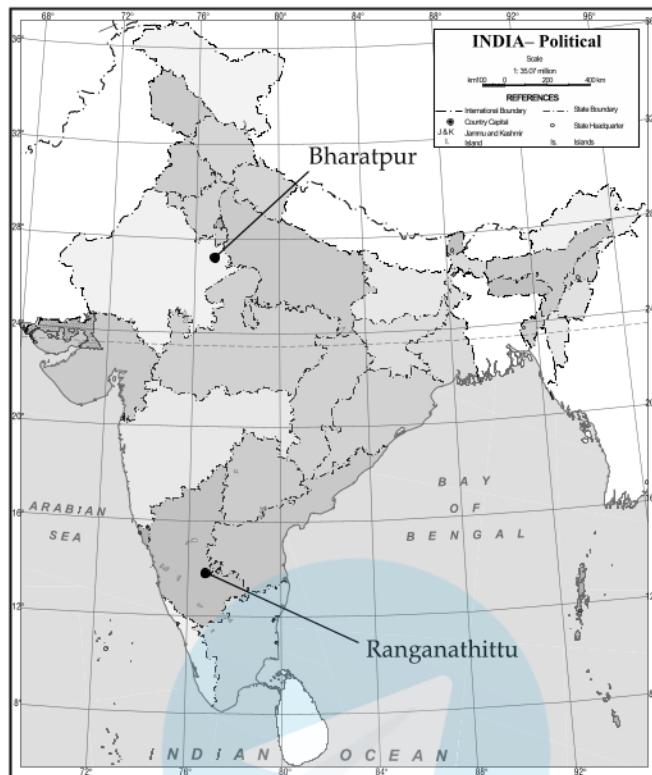
Shivpuri,



## MAP WORK

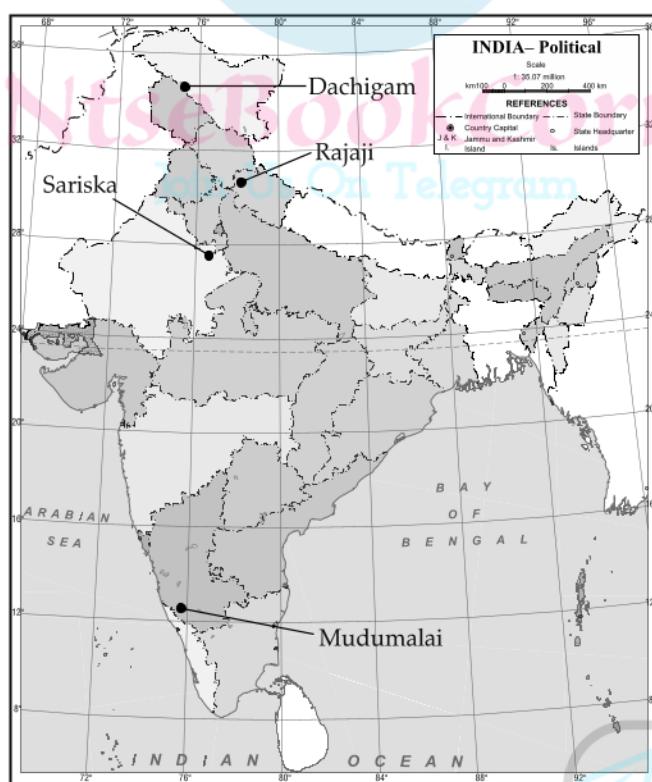
**Q. 5. Bird Sanctuaries :**  
Bharatpur and Rangananthittu

Ans.



**Q. 6. Wild life Sanctuaries :**  
Sariska, Mudumalai, Rajaji, Dachigam (Location and labelling).

Ans.



## UNIT-3 : Democratic Politics-I

CHAPTER

## 6

## ELECTORAL POLITICS

## Syllabus

- *Why Elections?*
- *What is our System of Elections?*
- *What makes elections in India democratic?*



## Learning Outcomes

- *Understand representative democracy via competitive party politics.*
- *Familiarize with Indian electoral system.*
- *Reason out for the adoption of present Indian Electoral System.*
- *Develop an appreciation of citizen's increased participation in electoral politics.*
- *Recognize the significance of the Election Commission.*

## Revision Notes

@NtseBookCorner  
Why Elections?➤ *Why do we need elections?*

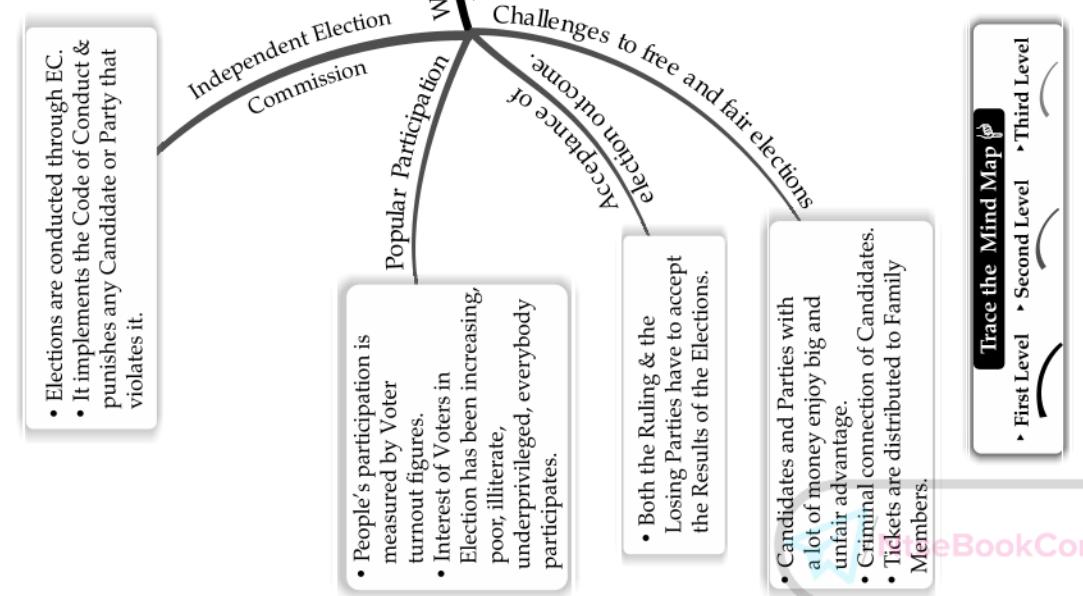
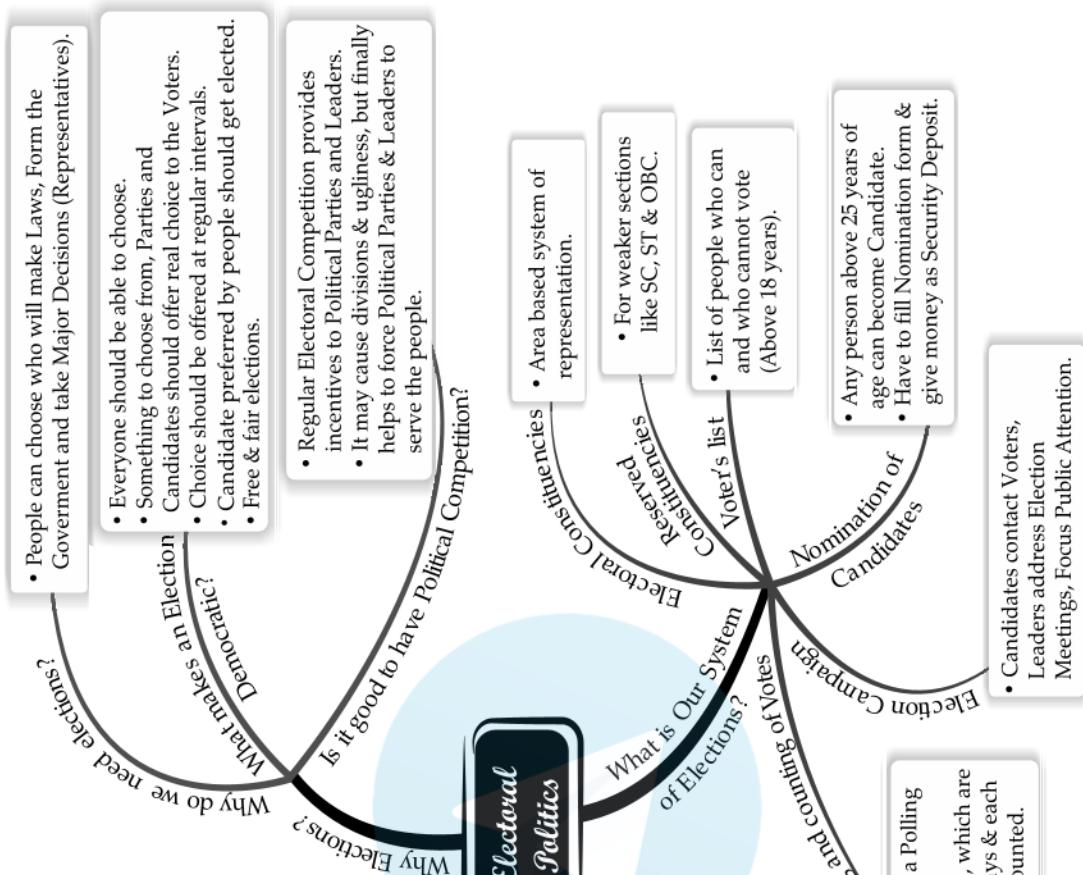
- In any democracy, elections take place regularly. There are more than one hundred countries in the world in which elections take place to choose people's representatives. But elections are also held in many countries that are not Democratic.
- It is not possible in any large community. Nor is it possible for everyone to have the time and knowledge to take decisions on all matters and also not possible for the people to sit together everyday and take all the decisions to run the country. Therefore, in most Democracies, people rule through their Representatives.
- The process by which people choose their Representatives at regular intervals is known as Election. Therefore, Elections are considered essential in our times for any Representative Democracy.
- In an election the Voters make many choice :
  - They can choose who will make Laws for them.
  - They can choose who will form the Government and take major decisions.
  - They can choose the party whose Policies will Guide the Government and Law making.

➤ *What Makes an Election Democratic?*

- The process of Election in Democratic countries differs from that of Non-Democratic countries. In a democratic Election, the preferred contestant is elected. The Elections are carried out in a free and fair manner.
- A simple list of the minimum conditions of a Democratic Election are :
  - Everyone should be able to choose his/her representative, i.e., everyone should have one vote and every vote should have equal value. This is termed as Universal Adult Franchise.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topic

Why Elections?



- There should be Parties and Candidates to choose from, freedom to contest and a wide choice for people.
- Elections must be held at regular intervals.
- Candidate preferred by the people should be elected.
- Elections should be held in a fair and free atmosphere to be Democratic.

➤ *Is it good to have Political Competition?*

- Actually, Elections are all about the Political Competition. This competition takes various forms. The most obvious form is the competition among Political Parties. At the Constituency level, it takes the form of competition among several candidates. If there is no competition, Elections will become pointless.
- There are some Demerits and Merits of the Political Competition.
  - Demerits :**
    - Creates a sense of disunity and 'Party Politics'.
    - Parties level allegations against each other by using dirty tricks to win Elections.
    - Long-term policies cannot be formulated.
    - Good people do not enter Politics.
  - Merits :**
    - Elections are good because they force the Ruling Party to perform. The Government is aware that it will be voted out of power if it does not perform as the people expected.
    - It forces Parties and leaders to perform, so competition is good.

## What is Our System of Elections?

- An election is carried out every five years to the Lok Sabha or the Vidhan Sabha, it is known as a General Election.
- Sometimes, the Lok Sabha and the Vidhan Sabha are dissolved and an Election is held before the expiry of their full term of five years. Such an election is called a Mid-Term Election. An Election may need to be held for a Single Constituency, due to the Untimely death or Resignation of an Elected Member. The Election carried out to fill this vacancy is known as a By-Election.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topic



India Electoral  
Process

➤ *Electoral Constituencies :*

- In India, we follow an Area Based System of Representation. The Country is divided into different areas for purposes of elections. These areas are called Electoral Constituencies. The voters who live in an area elect one representative.
- For Lok Sabha Elections, the Country is divided into 543 Constituencies. The Representative elected from each constituency is called a Member of Parliament or an MP.
- Similarly, each state is divided into a specific number of Assembly Constituencies. In this case, the Elected Representative is called the Member of Legislative Assembly or an MLA.
- The same Principle applies for Panchayat and Municipal Elections. Each Village or Town is divided into several 'Wards' that are like Constituencies. Each Ward elects one Member of the village or the Urban Local Body.
- Sometimes these Constituencies are counted as 'Seats', for each Constituency represents One Seat in the Assembly.

➤ *Reserved Constituencies :*

- The Constitution of India entitles Every Citizen to elect her/his Representative and to be elected as a Representative. However, the Constitution makers were worried that in an Open Electoral Competition, certain weaker sections may not stand a good chance to get elected to the Lok Sabha and the State Legislative Assemblies.
- The Constitution of India states a special system of Reserved Constituencies for the Scheduled Castes (SC) and Scheduled Tribes (ST) as well Other Backward Classes (OBC).
- One-third of the Seats are reserved in Rural and Urban Local Bodies for Women Candidates.

➤ *Voters' List :*

- In a Democratic Election like in our country, the list of those who are eligible to vote is prepared much before the Election and given to everyone. This list is officially called the Electoral Roll and is commonly known as the Voters' List.
- All the citizens of age 18 years and above can vote in an Election. Every citizen has the Right to Vote, regardless of his or her Caste, Religion or Gender. Some criminals and persons with unsound mind can be denied the Right to Vote, but only in rare situations.
- The Indian Government has introduced the Election Photo Identity Card [EPIC] System. Every eligible voter on the list is issued a Photo Identity Card. Carrying this EPIC is Not Mandatory. Instead, voters can provide proof of Identity like Ration Card or Driving Licence to exercise their Right to Vote.

➤ ***Nomination of Candidates :***

- Any citizen of India who can be a Voter can also become a candidate in Elections. The only difference is that in order to be a candidate the minimum age is 25 years.
- Political Parties nominate their candidates who get the Party symbol and support. Party's nomination is often called 'Party Ticket'.
- Every person who wishes to contest an election has to fill a 'Nomination form' and give some money as 'Security Deposit'. Every Candidate has to make a Legal Declaration, giving full details of :
  - Serious criminal cases pending against the candidate.
  - Details of the Assets and Liabilities of the candidate and his or her family.
  - Educational Qualifications of the candidate.

➤ ***Election Campaign :***

- The main purpose of Election Campaign is to have a free and open discussion about who is a better Representative, which Party will make a better Government or what is a Good Policy.
- Some of the successful slogans given by different political parties in various elections :
  - The Congress Party led by Indira Gandhi gave the slogan of Garibi Hatao (Remove Poverty) in the Lok Sabha Elections of 1971.
  - 'Save Democracy' was the slogan given by Janata Party under the leadership of Jayaprakash Narayan, in the Lok Sabha Election held in 1977.
  - The Left Front used the slogan of 'Land to the Tiller' in the West Bengal Assembly elections held in 1977.
  - 'Protect the Self-Respect of Telugus' given by Desam Party in Andhra Pradesh Assembly elections in 1983.
- During Campaign sometimes it is necessary to regulate campaigns to ensure that every political party and candidate gets a fair and equal chance to compete.

**According to Our Election Law :**

- Political Parties or Candidates cannot bribe or threaten Voters.
- They cannot ask for Votes on the grounds of Caste or Religion.
- They cannot make use of Government Resources or Places of Worship for Campaigning.
- They cannot spend more than ₹ 25 lakh per constituency for a Lok Sabha Election or more than ₹ 10 lakh per Constituency in an Assembly Election.

➤ The Indian Constitution provides equal rights of representation to all the Citizens of India.

➤ There is a common Code of Conduct for Election Campaigns, which all Political Parties in India have to follow. According to it, no Political Party or Candidate can :

- Use any place of worship for Election Propaganda.
- Use Government vehicles, air crafts and officials for Elections.
- Once Elections are announced, Ministers shall not lay foundation stones of any projects, take any Big Policy Decisions or make any Promises of providing Public Facilities.

➤ ***Polling and Counting of Votes***

- The Final stage of an Election is the day when the Voters cast or 'Poll' their Vote. That day is usually called the Election Day.
- Every Person whose name is on the voters' list can go to a nearby Polling booth, and cast his/her votes. Nowadays, Electronic Voting Machines (EVM) are used to record Votes.
- Once the Polling is over, all the EVMs are sealed and taken to a secure place.
- A few days later, on a fixed date, all the EVMs from a constituency are opened and the Votes secured by each candidate are counted. Within a few hours of counting, all the results are declared and it becomes clear as to who will form the Next Government.

➤ There is a common Code of Conduct for Election Campaigns, which all Political Parties in India have to follow.

## What Makes Election in India Democratic ?

***Independent Election Commission :***

- During the Election Process, many Political Parties adopt unfair practices to get votes. No Political Party can win an election through such unfair practices.
- India has a Democratic Election System. The Election system in India is controlled and governed by an independent and very powerful body called the Election Commission (EC). The EC is headed by the Chief Election Commissioner, who is assisted by several Election Commissioners. The present Chief Election Commissioner is Shri Sushil Chandra.
- The Election Commission of India performs several functions, starting from the Announcement of the elections to the Final Declaration of the Result.
- It drafts and implements the Code of Conduct for elections and takes disciplinary action against parties violating it.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topic



What makes  
Elections in India  
Democratic ?

- The Election Commission is authorized to advise the Government on decisions affecting the Election and control the transfer of Government Officials. The Election Commission also has the function of controlling the work of Government Officials on Election Duty. The Election Commission has the power to order a Re-poll in case it finds evidence of unfair practices during Polling.
- The people's participation can be measured through the Voter turnout on Polling day.

**Popular Participation :**

- The quality of the election process can also be checked by seeing the participation of people. Some conclusions about Participation in India :
  1. People's participation in the election is measured by voter turnout figures. Turnout indicates the percent of eligible Voters who actually cast their vote.
  2. In India, the poor, Illiterate and underprivileged people vote in larger proportion as compared to the rich and Privileged Sections.
  3. Common people in India feel that through elections they can bring pressure on Political Parties to adopt Policies and Programmes favourable to them.
  4. The interest of voters in election related activities has been increasing over the years.

**Acceptance of Election Outcome :**

- One Final Test of the free and fairness of the election is the Outcome of the Election.
- 1. The Ruling Parties routinely lose elections in India both at the National and State level.
- 2. In the US, an Incumbent or 'Sitting' Elected Representative rarely loses an Election. In India, about half of the sitting MPs or MLAs lose elections.
- 3. Candidates who are known to have spent a lot of money on 'Buying votes' and those with known Criminal connections often lose elections.
- 4. Barring very few Disputed Elections, the electoral Outcomes are usually accepted as 'People's Verdict' by the Defeated Party.

**Challenges to Free and Fair Elections :**

- Elections in India are basically free and fair. Sometimes this may not be true for every constituency.
- There are many limitations and challenges to Indian Elections. These include :
  1. Candidates and Parties with a lot of money enjoy a big and unfair advantage over smaller Parties.
  2. Candidates with criminal connections have been able to push others out of the electoral race and to secure a 'Ticket' from Major Parties.
  3. Tickets are distributed to relatives from their families.
  4. Elections offer little choice to Ordinary Citizens as Major Parties are quite similar to each other, both in Policies and practice.
  5. Smaller Parties and independent Candidates suffer a huge disadvantage as compared to Bigger Parties.

Join Us On Telegram

## Know the Terms

- **Election :** The process by which people choose their Representatives at regular intervals is known as election.
- **Constituency :** A particular area from where Voters elect a Representative to the Lok Sabha/ Vidhan Sabha.
- **Electorate :** It refers to the entire body of people who are qualified to vote in the elections for the legislatures or local bodies.
- **Franchise :** It refers to the Right of people to vote and elect their Representatives to make laws.
- **General Elections :** Elections held after the term of 5 years of Lok Sabha are called General Elections.
- **Mid-Term Election :** Sometimes, the Lok Sabha and the Vidhan Sabha are dissolved and an election is held before the expiry of their full term of five years. Such an Election is called a Mid-term Election.
- **By-election :** An Election may need to be held for a Single Constituency, due to the Untimely Death or Resignation of an Elected Member. The Election carried out to fill this vacancy is known as a By-election.
- **Universal Adult Franchise :** In our country, all the citizens who are 18 years and above can vote in an Election.
- **Campaigning :** It refers to a process by which a Candidate tries to persuade the Voter to vote for him rather than for others.
- **Election Photo Identity Card :** The Voters are required to carry this Card when they go out to Vote.
- **Voter's List :** List of those who are eligible to vote, that is prepared before the election.
- **Electoral Roll :** Voter's List is also known as Electoral Roll.
- **Election Manifesto :** A Document published by every Political Party before Elections containing the Policies and Programmes of that Party.

- **Electronic Voting Machine** : A device used to record votes on an Election Day.
- **Ballot Paper** : A Sheet on which the names of the candidates along with the Party name and Symbols are listed.
- **Election day** : The day when the voters cast or poll their vote is usually called the Election day.
- **Code of Conduct** : A set of Norms and Guidelines to be followed by Political Parties and Contesting Candidates during the Election time.
- **Incumbent** : The current holder of a Political Office.
- **Impersonation** : An Electoral malpractice in which a person assumes the identity of another for unlawful purposes is called Impersonation.
- **Election Commission** : A Parliamentary Body constituted to conduct free and fair elections in the country.



## (A) OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

**1 Mark Each**



### Stand Alone MCQs

**Q. 1. Why do we need elections? Give one reason.**

**[R + U1]**

- (A) Through Elections people come to know about Government Policies.
- (B) Through Elections we can choose the Party whose Policies will Guide the Government and law making.
- (C) Through Elections we can make Policies that will Guide the Government and assist in Law making.
- (D) Through Elections we can make Laws.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Elections are the most important tool of Direct Democracy through which people elect their Representatives who in turn make laws for them.

**Q. 2. Who led the 'Nyaya Yudh'?**

**[R1]**

- (A) Bhimrao Ambedkar
- (B) Chaudhary Devi Lal
- (C) Dr. Rajendra Prasad
- (D) Motilal Nehru

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Nyaya Yudh was a movement led by Chaudhary Devi Lal. Nyaya means justice and Yudh means struggle. Thus, Nyaya Yudh was a Struggle for Justice.

**Q. 3. What is meant by the term 'constituency'?**

**[R + U1]**

- (A) Place where the copy of Constitution is kept.
- (B) A particular area from where Voters elect a Representative to the Lok Sabha / Vidhan Sabha.
- (C) A body of voters.
- (D) None of the above.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The term Constituency is defined as an area from which a Person is elected as a Representative in the Parliament.

**Q. 4. What was the promise Chaudhary Devi Lal made to the Farmers and Small Businessmen?** **[R1]**

- (A) Land for cultivation
- (B) Provide loans without any rate of interest
- (C) Waive the loans of farmers and small businessmen
- (D) Free land for women

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The promise Chaudhary Devi Lal made to the Farmers and Small Businessmen. Chaudhary Devi Lal believed that the Economy of the Country is very much dependent on Farming for which he started the Movement to which he named "Nyaya Yudh" the Struggle for Justice. For this, he decided to forgive the Loans of the Farmers and Small Businessmen according to his promise if he won elections.

**Q. 5. How are Candidates elected in India?** **[U, A, E 1]**

- (A) By face value
- (B) One who is financially strong
- (C) One who secures the highest number of votes
- (D) Both (A) and (C)

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Candidate preferred by the people gets elected. India has a Parliamentary System defined by its Constitution. The power is distributed between the Central Government and the States. One who secures the highest number of votes is elected in an Election.

**Q. 6. For voting, the voter has to show which Identity Proof?** **[U, R, A1]**

- (A) Aadhar Card
- (B) Passport
- (C) EPIC (Election Photo Identity Card)
- (D) Driver's license

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Election Photo Identity Card is given to every person on the Voter's List. The voters are required to carry this Card when they go out to Vote, so that no one can vote for someone else.

**Q. 7. What is the use of Electronic Voting machines?**

**E, U, A 1**

- (A) To record the Votes of People
- (B) To show the power of Technology
- (C) To ensure absolute voting
- (D) To get on the spot Voting Results

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Electronic Voting Machines (EVM) are used to Record Votes. The machine shows the Names of the Candidates and the party symbols.

**Q. 8. What does the term 'Incumbent' mean?** **U 1**

- (A) The current holder of a Political Office
- (B) The candidate contesting the election
- (C) The outgoing candidate of the Dissolved House
- (D) None of the above

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** In the US, an Incumbent or 'Sitting' Elected Representative rarely loses an Election. In India, about half of the sitting MPs or MLAs loose elections.

**Q. 9. What is an Election Manifesto?** **U, A, An 1**

- (A) A Pamphlet showing Party manifesto
- (B) A Pamphlet appealing people to vote
- (C) A Pamphlet issued by a Political Party that tells people about its Programmes and Policies.
- (D) A Pamphlet issued by a political party mentioning the Names of its Leaders.

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** An Election Manifesto is a statement by a Political Party explaining its policies, saying what they will do if they win the election.

**Q. 10. What is the tenure of the Lok Sabha or Vidhan Sabha?** **R 1**

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| (A) 1 year  | (B) 2 years |
| (C) 3 years | (D) 5 years |

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Elections for the Lok Sabha are held every 5 years. After five years the term of all the elected representatives comes to an end. The Lok Sabha stands 'Dissolved'.

**Q. 11. Which state has the largest Vidhan Sabha in the Country?** **R 1**

- |                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| (A) Himachal Pradesh | (B) Uttar Pradesh |
| (C) Madhya Pradesh   | (D) Rajasthan     |

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Uttar Pradesh Vidhan Sabha with 404 members is the Largest State Assembly.

**Q. 12. Into how many Constituencies is the Country divided for Lok Sabha Elections?** **R 1**

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| (A) 541 | (B) 543 |
| (C) 451 | (D) 435 |

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** India is divided into 543 Constituencies for Lok Sabha Elections. The Representative elected from each Constituency is called a Member of Parliament.

**Q. 13. Who implements the Code of Conduct? **R + U 1****

- (A) The Election Commission
- (B) General Public
- (C) Prime Minister
- (D) Supreme Court

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Election Commission takes decisions on every aspect of Conduct and Control of election. It implements Code of Conduct.

**Q. 14. Who appoints the Chief Election Commissioner in India?** **R + U 1**

- (A) The Election Commission
- (B) The President of India
- (C) Supreme Court
- (D) High Court

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Chief Election Commissioner (CEC) is appointed by the President of India.

**Q. 15. What happens in Factionalism? **R + U 1****

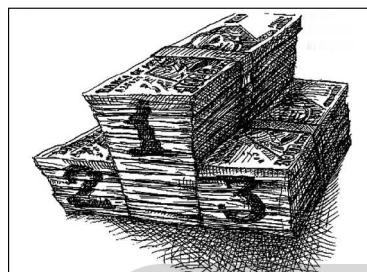
- (A) Different Political Parties and Leaders often level allegations against one another.
- (B) Parties and candidates often use dirty tricks to win elections.
- (C) Electoral fights do not allow sensible long-term policies to be formulated.
- (D) All of the above.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Factionalism is a concept in Political Anthropology that is used to describe Groups of people formed around a Leader who reject the Status Quo and actively work against Established Authority within a Society, such as State institutions, Political Parties or Economic interests.

### Picture Based Questions

**Q. 16. Study the given picture carefully : **U****



This picture is related to which of the following?

- (A) Monarchy
- (B) Democracy
- (C) Oligarchy
- (D) Totalitarianism

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Q. 17. Study the given picture carefully :**



**This picture is related to which of the following?**

- (A) Public Distribution System
- (B) Election
- (C) Famine
- (D) None of these

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**



### Assertion and Reason Based MCQs

**Directions : In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as :**

- (A) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

**Q. 1. Assertion (A) :** For Lok Sabha Elections, the Country is divided into 543 Constituencies.

**Reason (R) :** The Representative elected from each Constituency is called a Member of Parliament or an MP.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** For the Lok Sabha Elections, the whole country has been divided into 543 Parliamentary Constituencies. Each Constituency elects one member. The Members of the Lok Sabha are elected Directly by the Eligible voters.

**Q. 2. Assertion (A) :** The Congress party led by Indira Gandhi gave the slogan of Garibi Hatao (Remove Poverty) in the Lok Sabha elections of 1971.

**Reason (R) :** The Party promised to reorient all the Policies of the Government to remove Poverty from the country.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The slogan 'Garibi Hatao' (Remove Poverty) was given by Indira Gandhi in 1971 as her Election Campaign. The slogan was officially used by the Congress Party in 1980 for the Five-year Plan.

**Q. 3. Assertion (A) :** The independence of a High Court judge is ensured through certain provisions of the Constitution.

**Reason (R) :** The Salaries and Allowances of High Court judges are charged to the Consolidated Fund of India.

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Salaries and Allowances of the Judges of the High Court are charged upon the Consolidated Fund of the State.

**Q. 4. Assertion (A) :** The Election Commission decides the schedule of Election to Parliament or State Legislature.

**Reason (R) :** The Constitution provides for an independent body in the form of Election Commission to conduct free and fair elections.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Election Commission of India is an Autonomous Constitutional Authority responsible for administering Union and State Election processes in India. The body administers Elections to the Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, State Legislative Assemblies in India and the Offices of the President and Vice President in the Country.

**Q. 5. Assertion (A):** In India, people elect their own Representatives.

**Reason (R):** India is a Democracy.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** India, being a Democracy, it is a Government run by the Representatives elected by its people.

**Q. 6. Assertion (A):** Democracy is better than other forms of government.

**Reason (R):** It allows us to correct our own mistakes.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** A Democratic Government is a better government because it is an Accountable form of Government. Democracy improves the Quality of decision making. It provides a method to deal with differences and conflicts. It enhances the Dignity of Citizens. It allows us to correct our own mistakes, as in this the main power is with the Citizens so if they make a wrong choice in choosing the Representative then it can be changed. They can vote for others and the mistake would be corrected.



### Case-based MCQs

**I. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow :**

Once the Election Results were announced, the sitting Chief Minister resigned. The Newly Elected Members of Legislative Assembly (MLAs) of Lok Dal chose Devi Lal as their Leader. The Governor invited Devi Lal to be the new Chief Minister. Three days after the Election Results were declared, he became the Chief Minister. As soon as he became

the Chief Minister, his Government issued a Government Order waiving the Outstanding Loans of small Farmers, Agricultural Labourers and Small Businessmen. His party ruled the State for four years. The next elections were held in 1991. But this time his Party did not win popular support. The Congress won the Election and formed the Government.

**Q. 1. Where was this State Assembly Election held?**

- (A) In Punjab                    (B) In Haryana  
 (C) In Bihar                    (D) In Rajasthan

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Q. 2. In election campaign, Devi Lal said that if his party won the Election his Government would :**

- (A) give new loans to Farmers and Small Businessmen.  
 (B) waive the Interest of the loans bought by Farmers and Small Businessmen.  
 (C) waive the Loans of Farmers and Small Businessmen.  
 (D) waive 50% of the Loans bought by Farmers and Small Businessmen.

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Q. 3. What is the name of Devi Lal's Party?**

- (A) Lok Dal                    (B) Janata Lok Dal  
 (C) Congress                    (D) Bharatiya Janata Party

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Q. 4. Devi Lal's Party and its Partners won ..... seats in the State Assembly.**

- (A) 56 out of 80                    (B) 96 out of 100  
 (C) 76 out of 80                    (D) 66 out of 90

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Q. 5. Which Party won the Election in 1991?**

- (A) Lok Dal                    (B) Janata Lok Dal  
 (C) Congress                    (D) Bharatiya Janata Party

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Next Elections were held in 1991. But this time his Party did not win Popular support. The Congress won the Election and formed the Government.

**II. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:**

In our country such campaigns take place for a two-week period between the Announcement of the Final List of Candidates and the Date of Polling. During this period the Candidates contact their Voters, Political Leaders Address Election Meetings and Political Parties mobilise their supporters. This is also the period when Newspapers and Television news are full of Election related stories and debates. But Election Campaign is not limited to these two weeks only. Political Parties start preparing for Elections months before they actually take place. In Election Campaigns, Political Parties try to focus public attention on some big issues. They want to attract the Public to that issue and get them to vote for their Party on that basis.

**Q. 1. What is the minimum age to cast a vote?**

- (A) 16 years                    (B) 19 years  
 (C) 18 years                    (D) 17 years

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Q. 2. As the new people attain the voting age, their names are added to the.**

- (A) Voter List                    (B) Electoral Roll  
 (C) Election Manifesto                    (D) EPIC

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Q. 3. A complete revision of the voters list takes place every .....**

- (A) 2 years                    (B) 3 years  
 (C) 5 years                    (D) 4 years

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Q. 4. EPIC card is not compulsory for voting, the voters can show many other proofs of identity like:**

- (A) Birth Certificate and School Certificate  
 (B) Bank Statement and Life Insurance Policy  
 (C) Ration Card and Driving Licence  
 (D) Fixed Deposit Receipts and Mark Sheet

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Q. 5. In our Country such Campaigns take place for a period between the Announcement of the Final List of Candidates and the Date of Polling for :**

- (A) two weeks                    (B) five weeks  
 (C) three weeks                    (D) four weeks

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** In our country such Campaigns take place for a two-week period between the Announcement of the Final List of Candidates and the date of Polling.

**III. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:**

We noted above that in a Democratic Election people should have a real choice. This happens only when there are almost no restrictions on anyone to contest an Election. This is what our system provides. Anyone who can be a Voter can also become a Candidate in Elections. The only difference is that in order to be a Candidate the minimum age is 25 years, while it is only 18 years for being a Voter. There are some other restrictions on criminals, etc., but these apply in very extreme cases. Political Parties nominate their Candidates who get the Party symbol and support. Party's nomination is often called Party 'Ticket'.

Every person who wishes to contest an Election has to fill a 'Nomination Form' and give some money as 'Security Deposit'. Recently, a New System of Declaration has been introduced on direction from the Supreme Court. Every Candidate has to make a Legal Declaration, giving full details of :

- Serious criminal cases pending against the Candidate;
- Details of the Assets and Liabilities of the Candidate and his or her family; and

## ELECTORAL POLITICS

- Educational Qualifications of the Candidate. This Information has to be made Public. This provides an opportunity to the Voters to make their decision on the basis of the information provided by the Candidates.

**Q. 1. What should be the minimum age of a candidate to contest an election?**

- (A) 20 years                    (B) 25 years  
 (C) 18 years                    (D) 30 years

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Q. 2. Parties nominate their candidates who get the Party \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.**

- (A) name, fame                (B) symbol, support  
 (C) power, support            (D) status, symbol

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Q. 3. Every Candidate who wishes to contest an election has to fill a \_\_\_\_\_ form.**

- (A) Nomination                (B) Declaration  
 (C) Employment              (D) Bank

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Q. 4. Who has introduced a new system of declaration?**

- (A) District Court  
 (B) Civil Court

- (C) Supreme Court  
 (D) High Court

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Q. 5. Which of the following is not included in a legal declaration form?**

- (A) Serious criminal cases pending against the Candidate.  
 (B) Details of the Assets and Liabilities of the candidate and his or her family.  
 (C) Educational Qualifications of the Candidate.  
 (D) Caste, Religion Certificate.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Every candidate has to make a Legal Declaration, giving full details of :

- Serious criminal cases pending against the candidate;
- Details of the Assets and liabilities of the Candidate and his or her family; and
- Educational Qualifications of the Candidate. This Information has to be made Public. This provides an opportunity to the Voters to make their decision on the basis of the Information provided by the Candidates.



## (B) SUBJECTIVE QUESTIONS



### Short Answer Type Questions

(3 Marks Each)

**Q. 1. Name the Movement led by Chaudhary Devi Lal of Haryana in 1987. What promise did he make to lure the Voters before election? Which Political party did he form? [R (Board Term II, 2016, 2012)]**

**Ans.** (i) The name of this Movement was 'Nyaya Yudh'.  
 (ii) The popular promise was, if his party won the Elections, his government would waive the loans of Farmers and Small Businessmen.  
 (iii) The name of the Party that he formed was Lok Dal. [CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1×3=3)

**Q. 2. What are Constituencies? How many Constituencies are there in India for Lok Sabha? What is the basis of the division of these Constituencies? [R (Board Term II, 2012)]**

**Ans.** (i) The Country is divided into different areas for the purpose of elections. These areas are called Electoral Constituencies.  
 (ii) For Lok Sabha Elections, the Country is divided into 543 Constituencies at present.  
 (iii) The Basis of the Division of the Constituencies is on the Basis of population.

### Commonly Made Error

- Students are unable to understand the Basis of the Division of these Constituencies.

### Answering Tip

- Students should know that 543 Constituencies make a Lok Sabha and the Division is on the Basis of population.

**Q. 3. According to our Election Laws, which three things should be kept in mind during the Election campaign? [K (Board Term II, 2017)]**

**Ans. During the Election Campaign the focus should be :**

- (i) No Party or Candidate should try to bribe or threaten Voters.
- (ii) No one should use or Exploit Government resources.
- (iii) No one should spend more than the prescribed amount.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017] (1×3=3)

**Q. 4. Describe the Process of Campaigning in an Election in India. [U (Board Term II, 2017)]**

**Ans. Campaigning has a criteria in India:**

- (i) Campaigns take place for about two week period between the announcement of the List of Candidates and the Date of Polling.
- (ii) Candidates contact Voters, Address Meetings.
- (iii) Newspapers and television are full of an Election Related Stories.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017] (1×3=3)

**Q. 5. What is meant by 'Seats' in the Election? Explain with example.** U (Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** (i) In India, for the Lok Sabha Election, the Country is divided into 543 Constituencies.

(ii) Similarly, each State is divided into a specific number of Assembly Constituencies. Each Parliamentary Constituency has within it several Assembly Constituencies. The same principle applies to Panchayat and Municipal Elections.

(iii) Each Village or Town is divided into several 'wards' that are like Constituencies. Each Ward elects one member of the village or the Urban Local body. Sometimes these Constituencies are counted as 'Seats' for each Constituency represents one seat in the Assembly. (Any two)

**Example :** When we say a Party has won 20 Seats. It means that Candidates of that Party won in 20 Assembly Constituencies in the State and that it has 20 MLAs in the State Assembly. (2+1=3)

**Q. 6. Define the following :** R

- (i) **Election**
- (ii) **Election Campaign**
- (iii) **Voters Turn Out** (Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** (i) **Elections:** The process by which people choose their Representatives at regular intervals is known as Election.

(ii) **Election Campaign:** It refers to a process by which a Candidate tries to persuade the Voter to vote for him rather than for others.

(iii) **Voters Turn Out:** The percentage of Eligible Voters who cast their votes in an Election. (1×3=3)

**Q. 7. Distinguish between General Election and mid-term Elections.** (Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.**

<b>General Elections</b>	<b>Mid-term Elections</b>
General Election is a kind of Election which is held after a certain period of time (5 years in India) for all Constituencies at the same day or within few days.	Mid term Election is held when a Lok Sabha or a State Assembly dissolves as a whole before the expiring period. It is held to form the New House.
A General Election is the Election held after a stipulated period to elect All Members of a given Political Body. For example, the Lok Sabha Elections that are held in India, every five years.	If a Government (central and State) fails a confidence motion and no other alternative to the Government is possible, Mid-term Elections are held.
A General Election is an Election in which all or most members of a given Political Body are chosen.	Mid-term Elections are those which are conducted before the end of the term of a given Government. Such Elections cause undesired load of expense over the Public.

(1×3=3)

**Q. 8. Make an Ideal Code of Conduct for Elections.** U (Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** An Ideal Code of Conduct for Elections is made for Election campaigns. According to this, no Party or Candidate can :

- (i) Use any Place of worship for Election Propaganda.
- (ii) Nobody can use Government Vehicles, Air crafts and Officials for Elections.
- (iii) Once Elections are announced, Ministers shall not lay foundation stones of any Projects, take any Big Policy Decisions or make any Promises of providing Public Facilities.

(1×3=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students think that Model Code of Conduct is limited to certain Domains.

#### Answering Tip

- Students should know that Model Code of Conduct is mainly related to the Speeches, Polling day, Polling Booths, Portfolios, Election Manifestos, processions and General conduct of the Political Parties.

**Q. 9. Define the following :** [O.E.B.]R

- (a) **Universal Adult Franchise**
- (b) **Election Photo Identify Card**
- (c) **Voter's List** (Board Term II, 2014)

**Ans.** (a) **Universal Adult Franchise:** It is a Right granted to All Adults-men or Women, Rich or Poor, White or Black, to Vote for their representatives to run the Government. In practice it means that Everyone should have one vote and each vote should have equal value.

(b) **Election Photo Identify Card:** This is introduced by the Government to stop rigging. The Voters are required to carry this card when they go out to vote so that no one can Vote for someone else.

The Government has tried to give this card to every person on the Voters List. But the Card is not yet compulsory for Voting.

(c) **Voter's List:** In a democratic Election, the list of those who are eligible to vote is prepared much before the Election and given to everyone. This list is officially called the Electoral Roll and is commonly known as the Voters' List.

(Any three)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2014] (1×3=3)

**Q. 10. Define the following :** R

- (a) **Electronic Voting Machine (EVM)**
- (b) **Ballot Paper**
- (c) **Election Day** (Board Term II, 2014)

**Ans.** (a) **Electronic Voting Machine (EVM):** The Machine shows the Names of the Candidates and the Party Symbols. All the Voters have to press the button against the Name of the Candidate they want to cast their vote to.

**(b) Ballot Paper:** A Ballot Paper is a sheet of paper on which the names of the contesting Candidates along with Party name and Symbols are listed.

Earlier the Voters used to indicate who they wanted to vote for by putting a stamp on the Ballot Paper.

**(c) Election Day:** The Final stage of an Election is the day when the Voters cast or 'Poll' their vote. That day is usually called the Election Day.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2014] (1×3=3)

**Q. 11. Distinguish between voting and rigging.** [R]  
(Board Term II, 2014, 2013)

**Ans. Voting is the process through which Voters make an Official choice.**

(i) They can choose who will make Laws for them.  
(ii) They can choose who will Form the Government and Take Major Decisions.

(iii) They can choose the Party whose Policies will guide the Government and help in Law making.

**Rigging is a fraud and malpractices indulged by a Party or Candidate to increase its votes. It includes :**

- (i) Stuffing Ballot boxes by a few persons using the Votes of others.
- (ii) Recording multiple votes by the same person.
- (iii) Bribing or coercing Polling Officers to favour a Candidate. (Any three)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2014] 3

**Q. 12. Mention any three Slogans used by different Political Parties at the time of Election and the purpose behind them.** [R] (Board Term II, 2013)

**Ans. (i)** 'Garibi Hatao' by Congress in 1971. Removal of Poverty by Reorienting Government Policies.

**(ii)** 'Save Democracy' by Janata Party in 1977. (Undo the excesses committed during Emergency and Restore Civil Liberties.)

**(iii)** 'Land to the Tiller' by Left Front in West Bengal to safeguard the Rights of Peasants.

**(iv)** 'Protect the Self Respect of the Telugus' by Telugu Desam Party in 1983. (Any three)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013] (1×3=3)

**Q. 13. What is Universal Adult Franchise? Why has it been adopted in India?** [R] (Board Term II, 2012)

**Ans.** All the Adults have the Right to Vote and the value of each vote is the same. This is known as Universal Adult Franchise.

**Reasons are :**

- (i) Political equality.
- (ii) It establishes a Fair and True Democratic Government.
- (iii) It makes a Responsible Government.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012] (1+2=3)

**Q. 14. What is Model Code of Conduct? Mention any two restrictions imposed by the Election Commission on the Party and the Candidates.** [R]

(Board Term II, 2012)

**Ans.** The Model Code of Conduct is a set of guidelines issued by the Election Commission of India for Conduct of Political Parties and Candidates during Elections. All the Political Parties in our Country have agreed to a Model Code of Conduct for Election Campaigns.

All of them have to abide by certain rules and regulations which are supposed to Follow after the Announcement of Polling dates by Election Commission of India. No Candidate should :

- (i) Bribe or threaten Voters.
- (ii) Appeal to them in the Name of Religion.
- (iii) Use Government Vehicles or Government Resources. (Any two)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012] (1+2=3)

**Q. 15. Why are Elections considered essential for any Representative Democracy? Give three reasons.**

[R] (Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans. (i)** In an Election, the Voters are presented with many choices. They are free to choose their Representative who will make laws for them and change them if they wish to do so.

**(ii)** They can choose the one who will form the Government and take Major Decisions.

**(iii)** They can choose the Party whose policies will guide the Government in Law making.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011] (1×3=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Elections are thought to be a Mechanical process by students.

#### Answering Tip

- Students should learn that Elections in a Democratic Country has an advantage that the people's voice is heard.

**Q. 16. Describe the Legal Declaration which every Candidate has to make at the time of filling his / her Nomination Papers for the Election.** [A]

(Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans. The Declaration is made regarding:**

- (i) Serious Criminal cases pending against the Candidates.
- (ii) Details of the Assets and Liabilities of Candidate and his or her family.
- (iii) Educational Qualifications of the Candidates.

(1×3=3)

**Q. 17. How has the interest of the Voters in the Election-related activities increased in recent years in India?** [A] [O.E.B.]

- Ans. (i)** More than one-third of Voters participate in Campaign-related Activities.
- (ii)** More than half of the people identify themselves as being close to one or the other Political Party.
- (iii)** One out of every seven Voters is a member of a Political Party.

(1×3=3)

**Q. 18. Mention the role of the Election Commission in the Elections.** A (Board Term II, 2016)

**OR**

**Who appoints the Chief Election Commissioner of India? What Powers are exercised by the Election Commission of India?**

(Board Term II, 2015)

**OR**

**Describe the role of the Election Commission in holding free and fair Elections in India.**

(Board Term II, 2013)

**OR**

**Mention any three powers and functions of the Election Commission of India.**

(Board Term II, 2012)

**OR**

**Does the Election Commission of India has power to conduct free and fair elections? Support your answer with three arguments.**

(Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.** The Chief Election Commissioner is appointed by the President of India.

**Powers of the Election Commission :**

- (i) Independent and powerful body.
- (ii) The Election Commission takes independent Decision on all aspects of Election.
- (iii) The Election Commission has the power to implement Code of Conduct and punish Any Party who violates it.
- (iv) Government Officials on Election Duty, work under its control.
- (v) The Election Commission can Order Government to follow some guidelines to prevent undue misuse of Governmental Powers During Elections.

(Any three) (1×2=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

**Commonly Made Error**

- In this question students only explain Election Commissioner.

**Answering Tip**

- Students should learn Election Commission is an independent Powerful body and can also order Ruling Government to follow guidelines during Election time to avoid Misuse of Power.

**Q. 19. What are the Main Functions of the Election Commission of India?** B

(Board Term II, 2015, KVS)

**OR**

**Mention any three Powers and functions of the Election Commission of India.**

(Board Term II, 2012)

**Ans. (i)** The Election Commission (EC) has the Right to take Decisions on every aspect of Conduct and Controlling of Elections.

**(ii)** It implements the Code of Conduct and punishes violators.

**(iii)** It prevents misuse of the Government Machinery at the time of Elections.

**(iv)** All Government officers on Election duty are under the control of the Election Commission. (Any three)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012] (1×3=3)

**Q. 20. Explain any three challenges faced by the Election System in India.** (Board Term II, 2012)

**Ans. Challenges faced by Election System :**

- (i) Candidates and Parties with money have unfair advantage over Smaller Parties.
- (ii) Candidates with criminal connection push others out of Electoral Race.
- (iii) Some families tend to dominate Political Parties and distribute Tickets to Relatives.
- (iv) No real choice is given to Voters, as Major Parties are quite similar in Policies and Practice.
- (v) Small parties and Independent Candidates have disadvantages as compared to Bigger Parties.

(Any three) (1×3=3)

**Q. 21. Mention any three techniques of Election campaign.** A (Board Term II, 2011, 2010)

**Ans. (i) Posturing:** A few days before the actual Election day, the Election Campaign begins with posturing. These posters bear the photograph of the Candidate along with that of the National Leaders of the Party and appear on the walls of the Bazaars and Streets.

**(ii) Meetings:** Candidates hold Party Meetings and Corner Meetings to get support of various Groups of people.

**(iii) Processions:** Processions are often taken out and large number of Trucks, Tongas, Cycles and Scooters are used to carry the people who shout slogans in favour of their Candidates.

**(iv) Door-to-Door Canvassing:** This is undertaken by the different Candidates and their Party men to get the support of the Public. (Any three)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011] (1×3=3)

**Commonly Made Error**

- Students only mention about the unfair practices taking place during Election.

**Answering Tip**

- Students should learn that Door-to-door Canvassing, Meetings, processions are major techniques viewed during Election Campaign.

**Long Answer Type Questions**

(5 Marks Each)

**Q. 1. Write any five demerits to have Political Competition.** U (Board Term II, 2014, 2013)

**Ans. Five Demerits to have political competitions are :**

- Parties and Candidates often use dirty tricks to win Elections.
- Different Political Parties and Leaders often level allegations against one another.
- Political Competition creates a Sense of Disunity and 'Factionalism' in every locality.
- The pressure to win Electoral fights does not allow sensible Long-term Policies to be formulated.
- Some good people who may wish to serve the Country do not like the idea of being dragged into Unhealthy Competition.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2014] (1×5=5)

**Q. 2. Why do we need Elections? Mention any three Demerits of an Electoral Competition.** A  
(Board Term II, 2013)

OR

Describe any five demerits of an Electoral Competition. (Board Term II, 2012)

OR

An Electoral Competition has many Demerits. State any five reasons to justify the statements.  
(Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.** Election is a mechanism by which people choose their Representatives at regular intervals and change them if they wish to do so. Therefore, Elections are considered essential for Representative Democracy.

**Three Demerits of Electoral Competition :**

- Creates a sense of Disunity and Factionalism in every Locality.
  - Political Parties and Leaders level allegation at each other.
  - Political Parties and Candidates often use dirty tricks to win Elections.
  - Pressure to win an Election does not lead to the formulation of Long-term Policies.
  - Good people who may wish to serve the country do not enter this arena. They do not like Unhealthy competition.
- (Any three) (2+3=5)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011]

#### Commonly Made Error

- In this question students only explain Election, they don't explain the demerits of Electoral Competition.

#### Answering Tip

- Students should know that Political Parties have an Unhealthy Competitions with dirty tricks.

**Q. 3. What do you understand by Election? Explain the Nomination Process as practised in Indian Elections.** U  
(Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans. Election:** It is a Process by which Representatives get elected, who will further make Policies and Rule our Country.

#### Nomination Process:

- Party Tickets are given.
- Nomination Form is filled.
- Security Amount is deposited.
- Nomination Papers are scrutinized.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011] (1+4=5)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students generally mention the Criteria to fulfill the Nomination process.

#### Answering Tip

- Students should learn that Nomination process includes Imparting Party Tickets, Filling Nomination Forms, Depositing Security amount and scrutinizing Nomination Papers.

**Q. 4. Describe the various methods of Election Campaign used by Political Parties.** A  
(Board Term II, 2017)

**Ans. Methods of Election Campaign are :**

- Candidates contact the Voters personally.
- Election meetings are held.
- Political Parties mobilise their Supporters.
- Advertisements and Articles are published in Newspapers.
- Slogans on big issues are used to attract the Voters.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017] (1×5=5)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students generally explain only one and two Methods of Campaign.

#### Answering Tip

- Election Campaign includes publishing of advertisements and articles and using slogans, etc.

**Q. 5. Describe the procedure for Nomination of Candidates for Election in India.** A  
(Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** (i) Any one, who can be a Voter, can also become a Candidate in Elections. Political Parties nominate their Candidates who get Party Symbol and support. Party's Nomination is often called 'Party Ticket'.

(ii) Every person who wishes to Contest an Election has to fill a 'Nomination form' and give some Money as a 'Security Deposit'.

(iii) Recently, a New System of Declaration has been introduced on direction from the Supreme Court. Every Candidate has to make a Legal Declaration, giving full details of :

- Serious criminal cases pending against the Candidate,
- Details of the assets and liabilities of the Candidate and his or her family, and

- (c) Educational Qualifications of the Candidate.  
 (iv) This Information has to be made Public.  
 (v) This provides an opportunity to the Voters to make their Decision based on the information provided by Candidates.  $(1 \times 5 = 5)$

**Q. 6. Mention the eligibilities for Indian citizens to be a Member of Parliament.** **U** (Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** (i) The Constitution stipulates that only Indian Citizens of not less than 25 years of age are Qualified to be the Members of Lok Sabha. Similarly, only Indian Citizens of not less than 30 years of age may be Member of the Rajya Sabha.  
 (ii) The Parliament may prescribe additional Qualifications under Article 84 of the Constitution.  
 (iii) But a citizen is disqualified to become a Member of the Parliament :  
   (a) If he/she holds an Office of profit under the Union of a State Government.  
   (b) If he/she is declared to be of unsound mind by a Court.  
   (c) If he/she is a Bankrupt.  
   (d) If he/she has lost his/her Indian Citizenship through Voluntary Renunciation or through any other means.  
   (e) If he/she has any criminal records.

**Q. 7. In your opinion which Five Norms should Parties follow for Campaigning?** **A** (Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** Parties should follow some Norms for Campaigning :  
 (i) They should not spend extra amount on campaign.  
 (ii) They should not abuse each other.  
 (iii) They should not put false allegations on others.  
 (iv) They should not try to bribe the Voters.  
 (v) They should not make false promises or mislead people.  $(1 \times 5 = 5)$

**Q. 8. Describe the Rules and Regulations regarding Election Campaign in India.** **A**

(Board Term II, 2015)

**Ans.** No Party or Candidate should do the following :  
 (i) Use Government resources for campaigning.  
 (ii) Bribe or threaten Voters.  
 (iii) Appeal to Voters in the Name of caste or Religion.  
 (iv) Spend more than the prescribed amount more than ₹ 10 lakh in Assembly Election.  
 (v) If any Candidate violates the above Laws or Rules his Election can be rejected by the court.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015]  $(1 \times 5 = 5)$

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students are unable to understand rules and regulations regarding Election campaign.

#### Answering Tip

- No Political Party can bribe, threaten or appeal for vote on basis of religion.

**Q. 9. Analyse the trends of the Outcomes of Elections in India.** (Board Term II, 2017)

**Ans.** The trends of the Outcome of Elections in India are given below:

- Rich Candidates spend money on buying votes.
- Candidates having criminal connections often lose Elections.
- The Electoral Outcomes are accepted as people's verdict by the Defeated Candidate.
- Mostly, sitting MLAs and MPs lose Elections.
- Ruling Party often loose Elections due to incumbency.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017]  $(1 \times 5 = 5)$

**Q. 10. Describe some unfair practices that take place during Elections.** **A**

(Board Term II, 2015)

**Ans.** The Unfair practices used during Elections are :

- False names are included in the Voter list.
- Misuse of Government Machinery.
- Abuse of money by Rich Candidates.
- Rigging on the Polling Day.
- Use of Muscle Power by the Candidates.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2015] 5

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students do not explain this question because they cannot differ between Unfair Practices and Election campaign.

#### Answering Tip

- The major unfair practices observed during Elections are inclusion of false Name in the Voter List and rigging and Abuse of Money.

**Q. 11. Do you think Educational Qualifications should be necessary for the Candidate aspiring to stand in Elections? Give your views in favour or against it.**

**A** (Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.** (i) Educational qualifications are not relevant to all kind of jobs.

(ii) Relevant qualification for being an MLA or an MP is the ability to understand People's concerns, problems and the way to solve them.

(iii) Putting an Educational Qualification would go against the Spirit of Democracy.

(iv) If Educational Qualification was made compulsory it would mean depriving a majority of the country's Citizens to Contest Elections.  $(4 \times 1\frac{1}{4} = 5)$

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011]



## CHAPTER

## 7

## WORKING OF INSTITUTIONS

## Syllabus

- *How is the major Policy decision taken?*
- *Parliament*
- *Political Executive*
- *Judiciary*



## Learning Outcomes

- *Get an overview of central governmental structures.*
- *Identify the role of Parliament and its procedures.*
- *Distinguish between political and permanent executive authorities and functions.*
- *Understand the parliamentary system of executive's accountability to the legislature.*
- *Understand the working of Indian Judiciary.*

## Revision Notes

## How the major Policy decision taken?

## A Government Order

- On August 13, 1990, the Government of India issued an Order.
- It was called an Office Memorandum.
- According to this order, other than SC and ST, the 27% Job Reservation benefit will be given to a New Third category called Socially and Educationally Backward Classes (SEBC).
- Only persons who belong to Backward classes were eligible for this Quota.

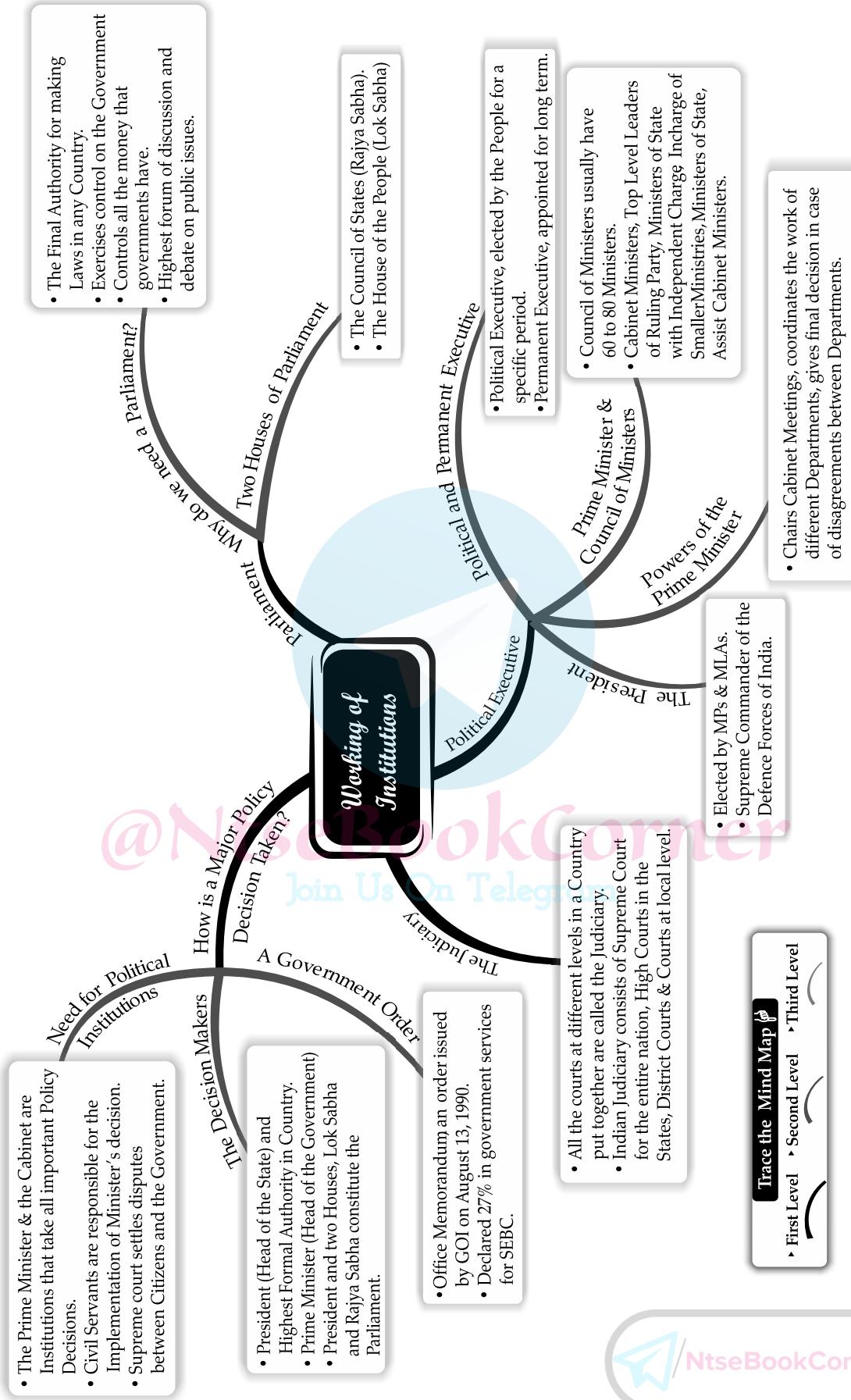
## The Decision Makers

- In a Democratic Government, the Decision Making Power is divided in three separate organs – the Legislature, the Executive and the Judiciary.
- The Legislature makes the Laws, the Executive Implements them and the Judiciary resolves Disputes that arise out of Major Policy Decisions. It consists of an Assembly of the People's Representatives which has the power to enact Laws for a Country.
- The Executive is a group of persons with the authority to initiate Major Policies, make decisions and implement them on the basis of Constitutional Laws. The Judiciary is an Institution that administers Justice and Resolves legal disputes. All the Courts in the Country are collectively called the Judiciary. Any Major Policy decision is conveyed through a Government order. A Government Order is also called an Office Memorandum. This Office Memorandum was the culmination of a long chain of events.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topic



Major Policy  
Decisions



- The Second Backward Classes Commission in India was established in 1979 by the Janata Party Government under the then Prime Minister, Morarji Desai. It was popularly known as the Mandal Commission.
- As per the Mandal Commission recommendations, a Government order announced that 27 percent of Vacancies in Civil Posts and Services under the Government of India would be Reserved for Socially and Economically Backward Classes (SEBC). The Reservations issue was strongly protested by the people stating that this largely affected everyone's Job Opportunities.
- Some people felt that Reservations were necessary to Balance the inequality among people of different castes in India. Others felt that Reservations were unfair and would deny equal opportunities to those who did not belong to Backward Communities. These cases were grouped together and called the 'Indira Sawhney and others Versus the Union of India Case'.
- The Supreme Court ordered that the well-to-do persons from Backward Classes be excluded from receiving the Benefits of Reservation. Thus, the issue was resolved and a modified Office Memorandum was issued.

### ***Need for the Political Institution***

- A Democracy works well when Political Institutions perform functions assigned to them.
- Institutions involve Meetings, Committees and Routines.
- This often leads to delays and complications.
- Some of the delays and complications introduced by Institutions are very useful as they provide an opportunity for a wider set of people to be consulted.
- Institutions make it difficult to have a good decision taken very quickly. But, they also make it equally difficult to rush through a bad decision.
- There are several such Institutions at work : The Prime Minister and the Cabinet are Institutions that make all the Important Policy Decisions. The Civil Servants are responsible for taking steps to implement the Policy decisions effectively. The Supreme Court, as an Institution, resolves the disputes between the Citizens and the Government.

### ***Parliament***

#### ***Why do we need a Parliament?***

- The Parliament is a National Assembly of Elected Representatives of the People. The Assembly of Elected Representatives of the People at the State Level is called the Legislature or the Legislative Assembly. The Parliament has the Authority of Enacting Laws It can add New Laws, and Change or Abolish Existing Laws. National Policy and Important Public Issues are discussed and debated in the Parliament.

Scan to know more about this topic



Difference between Rajya Sabha & Lok Sabha

### ***Two Houses of Parliament***

- The Parliament consists of the Office of the President of India and two houses—the Rajya Sabha or the Council of States, and the Lok Sabha or the House of the People.
- The Rajya Sabha is the Upper House of the Parliament of India. It consists of 250 Members of which 12 are nominated by the President of India. The remainder of the Rajya Sabha is Elected by State and Territorial Legislatures. The term of Office is 6 years and 1/3<sup>rd</sup> of the Members retire every 2 years. The Vice President is the Ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha.
- The Lok Sabha is directly elected by the people of India. The Lok Sabha can have a maximum of 552 Members, including 20 Members from the Union Territories and 2 from the Anglo-Indian Community. The Speaker Presides over the Sessions.
- Though the Rajya Sabha has some Special Powers, the Lok Sabha has Supreme Powers. The Lok Sabha can be dissolved by the President. Due to a large number of Members, the view of the Lok Sabha matters a lot. Once the Lok Sabha passes the Budget or a Law related to Money, the Rajya Sabha cannot reject it.

Scan to know more about this topic



Political Executive

### ***Political Executive***

#### ***Political and Permanent Executive***

- A Group of Functionaries is called the Executive. The Executive has two categories: Political and Permanent. The Political Executive consists of Political Leaders who are Elected by the people for a specific term.
- The Permanent Executive includes Members who are appointed on a long-term basis. The Permanent Executive is also called the Civil Services. The Political Executive has more powers and the final say in all important decisions, as they are the Representatives of the people.

### ***Prime Minister and Council of Ministers***

- The Political Executive includes the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers. The President appoints the leader of the majority or the Coalition Party that has a majority in the Lok Sabha, as the Prime Minister. Prime Minister is the most important Political Institution in the Country.

- The Remaining Ministers are appointed by the President based on the Prime Minister's advice. These Ministers are usually from the Party or the Coalition that has a majority in the Lok Sabha. The Group of Ministers is called the Council of Ministers. It usually has 60 to 80 Ministers of Different Ranks. The Council of Ministers includes Cabinet Ministers, Ministers of State with Independent charge and other Ministers of State.
- A Union Cabinet Minister is a Senior Minister, from the Ruling Party, In charge of a Ministry. A Cabinet Minister may also hold Additional Charges of other Ministries. The Cabinet is the Inner ring of the Council of Ministers. It consists of around 25 Members.
- A Minister of State is a Junior Minister with an overseeing Cabinet Minister, usually having specific responsibility in that Ministry. Most important decisions are taken in the cabinet Meetings. Due to this reason, Parliamentary Democracy in most countries is also known as the Cabinet Form of Government.
- Ministers of State with Independent Charge are usually In-charge of Smaller Ministries. They participate in the Cabinet Meetings only when specially invited.

#### **Powers of Prime Minister**

- The Prime Minister has several powers as the Head of the Government. He chairs Cabinet Meetings and assigns work to the other Ministers. He also has the Power to Dismiss Ministers. If the Prime Minister resigns, the Entire Ministry is supposed to resign.
- The Prime Minister is the most Powerful Member in the Cabinet. The Powers of the Prime Minister in all Parliamentary Democracies of the World has increased so much in the recent decades that Parliamentary Democracies are sometimes seen as the Prime Ministerial form of Government.

#### **The President**

- The President is the Head of the State and has nominal powers. The President supervises the overall functioning of all Political Institutions in the Country to achieve the Objectives of the State. The President is not directly elected by the people. All the Members of Parliament (MPs) and the Members of the State Legislative Assemblies elect the President.

#### **Powers of President**

- All Major Government activities, Policy Decisions and Laws are issued in the name of the President. The President takes all major decisions based on the advice of the Council of Ministers.
- One major decision that the President makes on his or her own is to appoint the Prime Minister. The President appoints the Leader of the Majority Party or Coalition that enjoys a majority support in the Lok Sabha as the Prime Minister.

#### **The Judiciary**

- The Judiciary includes all the Courts at different levels in a Country and consists of the Supreme Court, High Courts and District Courts. The Supreme Court is the Top Legal Organisation.
- The Indian Courts of Law are further divided into two groups : Civil Courts and Criminal Courts. The Civil Courts deal with General Disputes regarding Land, Property and Rights. The Criminal Courts deal with cases of Murder, Riot and Looting.
- The Supreme Court controls the Judicial Administration in the Country and Resolves disputes between Citizens and the Government, between two or more States and between States and the Union Governments.
- The Supreme Court is the Highest Court of Appeal in Civil and Criminal Cases. It can hear appeals against the decisions of the High Courts.
- The Indian Judiciary is known for being Independent of the Legislature and the Executive and is Non-partisan. The Judges do not act on the Direction of the Government or the Ruling Party. The Judges for the Supreme Court and High Courts are appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister and in consultation with the Chief Justice of Supreme Court.
- The Senior Judges of the Supreme Court select the New Judges of the Supreme Court and the High Courts. There is very little scope for interference by the Political Executive. The Senior most Judge of the Supreme Court is usually appointed as the Chief Justice. Once a person is appointed as Judge of the Supreme Court or the High Court it is nearly impossible to remove him or her from that position. It is as difficult as removing the President of India.
- A Judge can be removed only when an Impeachment Motion is passed separately by a Two-third Majority of Members of each of the Two Houses of the Parliament.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topic



The Judiciary

#### **Powers of Judiciary**

- The Supreme Court and the High Courts have the Power to interpret the Constitution. If the Courts feel that any Law or Action of the Government is against the Constitution, they can declare it Invalid. The Supreme Court has ruled that the Basic Principles of the Constitution which cannot be changed by the Parliament. It acts like a Guardian of the Fundamental Rights.
- The Judiciary can Review Laws and Government Actions. The Indian Judiciary is Independent in the Appointment and Removal of Judges, and in the Execution of its Powers.

- Anyone can approach the Court if public interest and Human Rights are affected by the actions of the Government. This is called a Public Interest Litigation. The Courts can intervene to ensure that the Government and its Officials are not misusing the powers.

## Know the Terms

- **Legislature :** The Legislature makes the Laws. It consists of an Assembly of the People's Representatives with the power to Enact Laws for a Country.
- **Executive :** An Executive is a Group of People with the Authority to Initiate Major Policies, Make Decisions and Implement them on the Basis of Constitutional Laws.
- **Political Institutions :** A Set of Procedures for regulating the Conduct of Government and Political life in the Country.
- **Office memorandum :** A Communication issued by an appropriate authority stating the Policy or Decision of the Government.
- **Reservations:** A Policy that declares some Positions in Government employment and Educational Institutions 'Reserved' for people and communities who have been discriminated against, are Disadvantaged and Backward.
- **Judiciary :** The Judiciary is an Institution that Administers Justice and Resolves Legal Disputes.
- **President :** The President is the Head of the State.
- **Supreme Court :** The Supreme Court is the Highest Judicial Court in our Country. It resolves the disputes between the Citizens and the Government.
- **Parliament :** The Parliament is a National Assembly of Elected Representatives of the People.
- **Lok Sabha :** It is the Lower House of the Parliament. The Lok Sabha is directly elected by the People of India.
- **Rajya Sabha :** The Rajya Sabha is the Upper House of the Parliament of India. The Rajya Sabha is Indirectly elected by Members of State Assemblies.
- **Speaker :** He is the Presiding Officer of the Lok Sabha and is responsible for the efficient conduct of business in the Lok Sabha.
- **Question Hour :** During a Parliamentary Session, a time is fixed for asking questions and answering them only.
- **Prorogue :** To discontinue a Meeting of Parliament for a time without dissolving it.
- **Adjourn :** To terminate the sitting of the House which meets again at the time appointed for the next sitting.
- **Ordinance :** Temporary Law promulgated by the President of India on the Recommendations of the Union Cabinet. It can only be issued when the Parliament is not in Session. It has to be approved by the Parliament within six weeks of its First Sitting otherwise the Ordinance would be considered Null and Void.
- **Money Bills :** Bills dealing with Money Matters like Taxes, Income, Expenditure and Grants.
- **Council of Ministers :** A body of Ministers who are Collectively Responsible to the Lok Sabha.
- **Cabinet :** A Body of Senior Ministers which controls Important Ministers.
- **Collective responsibility :** For any decision or action of the Cabinet, the Council of Ministers is collectively responsible. If any Cabinet decisions are not approved by the Parliament, the entire Council of Ministers has to resign.
- **Emergency :** Extraordinary or abnormal situation in a Country.
- **Cabinet Secretariat :** The Cabinet as a team is assisted by the Cabinet Secretariat. This includes many Senior Civil Servants who try to coordinate the working of Different Ministries.
- **Judiciary :** The Judiciary is an Institution that Administers Justice and Resolves Legal Disputes.
- **Impeachment :** A Special Parliamentary Procedure to prosecute or to remove the President and Other Judges for the Violation of the Constitution.



### (A) OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

**1 Mark Each**



#### Stand Alone MCQs

Q. 1. Once the Lok Sabha passes the Budget of the Government or any Other Money Related Law, the Rajya Sabha cannot reject it. The Rajya Sabha can only delay it by :

- (A) 14 days                          (B) 15 days  
 (C) 16 days                           (D) 17 days

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Once the Lok Sabha passes the Budget of the Government or any other Money Related Law, the Rajya Sabha cannot reject it. The Rajya Sabha can only delay it by 14 days or suggest changes in it. The Lok Sabha may or may not accept these changes.

**Q. 2. What do the Civil Servants do?**

- (A) They take important Policy decisions.
- (B) They Implement the Ministers' Decisions.
- (C) They settle the Disputes.
- (D) None of the above.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Civil Servant Officers work under Political Executive and assist them in carrying out the day-to-day Administration.

**Q. 3. Which body acts as the Guardian of Fundamental Rights?**

- (A) District Courts      (B) Supreme Court
- (C) Election Commission (D) Legislature

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Powers and the Independence of the Indian Judiciary allows it to act as the Guardian of the Fundamental Rights.

**Q. 4. Why does a Minister take the final say although the Advisors and Experts working in the Department may be more qualified?**

- (A) He is finally answerable to the people for all the consequences of his decision.
- (B) The Minister is an Elected Representative of the People and thus, Empowered to exercise the will of the People on their behalf.
- (C) The Minister decides the overall framework and objectives in which decisions on Policy should be made.
- (D) All of the above.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** In a Democracy, the will of the people is Supreme. The Minister is Elected by the people and is thus, empowered to exercise the Will of the people on their behalf. The Minister is finally answerable to the people for all the consequences of the decision taken by him or her. That is why, the Minister takes all the Final Decisions.

The Minister decides the overall framework and objectives in which decisions on a Policy should be made. The Minister takes the Advice of Experts on all the Technical Matters. But very often, Experts hold different opinions or place before the Minister more than one option. Depending on what the overall Objective is, the Minister decides.

**Q. 5. Who is the Head of the State and the Highest Formal Authority in the Country?**

- (A) The Prime Minister
- (B) The President
- (C) Speaker of Lok Sabha
- (D) Home Minister

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** President is the Head of the State and is the Highest Formal Authority in the Country. He is the Commander-in-chief of the Indian Armed Forces.

**Q. 6. What is meant by Coalition Government? U**

- (A) A Government formed by an Alliance of two or more Political Parties when no Single Party enjoys majority support.
- (B) A Government formed by Absolute Majority.
- (C) A Government formed by an Alliance of only two Political Parties when no Single party enjoys majority support.
- (D) A Government formed by an Alliance of two or more Social Groups.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** A Government formed by an Alliance of two or more Political Parties when no Single Party enjoys majority support.

**Q. 7. How many Members are nominated by the President in Rajya Sabha? R**

- (A) 10
- (B) 21
- (C) 12
- (D) 11

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Twelve Members are nominated to the Rajya Sabha by the President of India for six-years term for their contributions towards Arts, Literature, Sciences and Social services.

**Q. 8. When does a Bill become a Law?**

- (A) After approval from the General Public
- (B) Only after the President's assent
- (C) Only after the Prime Minister's assent
- (D) Only after the Speaker's assent

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** In the case of a Money Bill or a Bill passed at a joint sitting of the Houses, the Lok Sabha Secretariat obtains assent of the President. The Bill becomes an Act only after the President has given assent to it.

**Q. 9. Which institution is Empowered to Administer Justice in India? R + U**

- (A) Legislature
- (B) Executive
- (C) Judiciary
- (D) Ruling party

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.****Q. 10. Who elects the President of India? R + U**

- (A) The Speaker
- (B) The Prime Minister
- (C) All the Members of the Parliament (MPs) and the Members of the State Legislative Assemblies (MLAs) elect the President.
- (D) Only the Members of the State Legislative Assemblies elect the President.

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Q. 11. What kind of Judiciary do we have in India?**

- (A) Bounded Judiciary
- (B) Bias Judiciary
- (C) Disintegrated Judiciary
- (D) Independent and integrated Judiciary

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Indian Judicial system is a Single Integrated System. The Constitution of India divides the Indian Judiciary into the Supreme Court and the High Courts and the Subordinate Judiciary (the Lower Courts under the control of the High Courts).

**Q. 12. Which Organ of the Government has the power to interpret the Constitution? U**

- (A) Supreme Court      (B) High Court
- (C) District Court      (D) Both (A) and (B)

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Q. 13. Study the given Picture carefully and answer the question that follow : U**

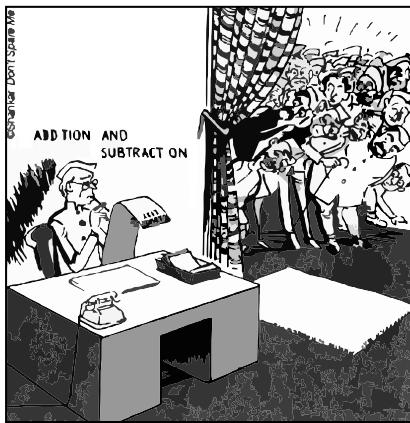


This picture is related to which of the following.

- (A) General Meeting
- (B) Assembly Meeting
- (C) Cabinet Meeting
- (D) None of these

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Q. 14. Study the given Picture carefully :**



This picture is related to which of the following :

- (A) 1956 election
- (B) 1962 election
- (C) 1967 election
- (D) 1972 election

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**



### Assertion and Reason Based MCQs

**Directions :** In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as :

- (A) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

**Q. 1. Assertion (A) :** The Government of India had appointed the Second Backward Classes Commission in 1979.

**Reason (R):** It was headed by B.P. Mandal. Hence it was popularly called the Mandal Commission.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Government of India appointed the second All India Backward Classes Commission on 1<sup>st</sup> January, 1979, popularly known as Mandal Commission under Article 340 of the Constitution to investigate the conditions of Socially and Educationally Backward Classes.

**Q. 2. Assertion (A) :** The Constitution of India has made the President the Supreme-Commander of Armed Forces.

**Reason (R) :** Democracy maintains Civilian Supremacy over the Military Force.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Q. 3. Assertion (A) :** If the Budget presented to the Rajya Sabha is not passed within the stipulated period, the Budget Proposals are not affected.

**Reason (R):** In Financial matters, the Lok Sabha is more powerful than the Rajya Sabha.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Q. 4. Assertion (A) :** There are limitations on the Legislative Authority of the State Legislature.

**Reason (R):** Certain Bills on the State List can be introduced in the State Legislature only with the President's approval.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Q. 5. Assertion (A) :** The Rajya Sabha must pass a resolution on the necessity of an All India Service before a New Service Common to States and the Union is created.

**Reason (R):** Indian Constitution is federal and a resolution passed by a Two-thirds Majority in Rajya Sabha would practically signify the consent of the States.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Q. 6. Assertion (A) :** The President is a part of the Legislature.

**Reason (R):** A Bill is not passed by the Houses of Parliament and can become a Law without the President's assent.

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** A Bill approved by both Parliamentary Houses goes out to the Speaker. The Speaker signs it, then the Bill is submitted to the Assent Committee President. If the President approves the Bill, then it becomes Law.



### Case-based MCQs

**I. Read the following text and answer the following questions on the basis of the same:**

The Constitution does not say very much about the powers of the Prime Minister or the Ministers or their relationship with each other. But as Head of the Government, the Prime Minister has wide ranging powers. He chairs Cabinet Meetings. He Coordinates the work of different Departments. His decisions are final in case Disagreements arise between Departments. He exercises General Supervision of different Ministries. All Ministers work under his leadership. The Prime Minister distributes and redistributes work to the Ministers. He also has the Power to Dismiss Ministers. When the Prime Minister quits, the Entire Ministry quits.

Thus, if the Cabinet is the most powerful Institution in India, within the Cabinet it is the Prime Minister who is the Most powerful. The Powers of the Prime Minister in all Parliamentary democracies of the World have increased so much in recent decades that Parliamentary Democracies are sometimes seen as Prime Ministerial Form of Government. As Political Parties have come to play a major Role in Politics, the Prime Minister controls the Cabinet and Parliament through the Party. The Media also contributes to this trend by making Politics and Elections as a Competition between Top leaders of Parties. In India too we have seen such a tendency towards the concentration of powers in the hands of the Prime Minister. Jawaharlal Nehru, the First Prime Minister of India, exercised Enormous Authority because he had great influence over the Public. Indira Gandhi was also a very Powerful Leader compared to her Colleagues in the Cabinet. Of course, the Extent of Power wielded by a Prime Minister also depends on the Personality of the Person Holding that Position.

**Q. 1. The Political Executive includes the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.**

- (A) The President, the Vice President
- (B) The Governor, the Prime Minister
- (C) The Prime Minister, Council of Ministers
- (D) The Prime Minister, the President

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Q. 2. When the Prime Minister quits, who quits along with him/her?**

- (A) No Minister quits with him/her
- (B) The Entire Ministry quits
- (C) Only 50% Minister quit
- (D) The President quits along with him.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Resignation of the Prime Minister means the Resignation of the whole Council of Ministers.

**Q. 3. The \_\_\_\_\_ also contributes by making Politics and Election as a Competition between Top Leaders of Parties.**

- (A) Government
- (B) Public
- (C) Media
- (D) Opposition Parties

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Q. 4. \_\_\_\_\_ was also a very Powerful Leader compared to Other Colleagues in the Cabinet.**

- (A) Indira Gandhi
- (B) Mahatma Gandhi
- (C) Jawaharlal Nehru
- (D) Lal Bahadur Shastri

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Q. 5. \_\_\_\_\_ of India, exercised enormous Authority because he had great influence over the Public.**

- (A) The First Prime Minister
- (B) The Fifth Prime Minister
- (C) The Sixth Prime Minister
- (D) The Present Prime Minister

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**II. Read the following text and answer the following questions on the basis of the same:**

Prime Minister is the most important Political Institution in the Country. Yet there is no Direct Election to the post of the Prime Minister. The President appoints the Prime Minister. But the President cannot appoint anyone he likes. The President appoints the Leader of the Majority Party or the Coalition of Parties that Commands a Majority in the Lok Sabha as Prime Minister. In case No Single Party or Alliance gets a Majority, the President appoints the person most likely to secure a Majority Support. The Prime Minister does not have a fixed tenure. He continues in power so long as he remains the Leader of the Majority Party or Coalition.

**Q. 1. What is meant by Political Executive?**

- (A) The Speaker
- (B) Political Leaders who are elected by the People for a specific term.
- (C) Only those Political Leaders who are in the Ruling Party.
- (D) Only those Political Leaders who are in the Opposition Party.

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Political Executives are those Executives which are representatives of the People and are elected by the people through an Electoral process for certain period of time.

**Q. 2. Who is the Head of the Government and exercises All Governmental Powers?**

- (A) The Prime Minister
- (B) The President
- (C) The Speaker
- (D) Head of the Ruling Party

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Prime Minister is the Head of the Government and exercises All Governmental Powers. He takes most of the decisions in the Cabinet Meetings. Parliament consists of the President and two Houses, Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.

**Q. 3. Who among the following is a part of the Political Executive?**

- (A) Home Minister
- (B) District Collector
- (C) Secretary of the Ministry of Home Affairs
- (D) Director General of Police

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Political leaders under the Ministry of Home Affairs for the Political Executive branch of the Government.

**Q. 4. What is the Government formed by an Alliance of two or more Political Parties called?**

- (A) Cooperation Government
- (B) Coalition Government
- (C) Consensus Government
- (D) Cooperative Government

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** A Coalition Government is a form of Government in which Political Parties cooperate to form a Government.

**Q. 5. Directions :** In the following question, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as :

- (A) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (B) Both (A) and (R) are true but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

**Assertion(A) :** The Prime Minister has a fixed tenure of five years.

**Reason(R) :** He continues in power so long as he remains the Leader of the Majority Party or Coalition.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Prime Minister does not have a fixed tenure. He continues in power so long as he remains the Leader of the Majority Party or Coalition.

**III. Read the following text and answer the following questions on the basis of the same:**

### The Presidential System

Presidents all over the World are not always Nominal Executives like the President of India. In many countries of the World, the President is both the Head of the State and the Head of the Government. The President of the United States of America is the most well known example of this kind of President. The US President is directly Elected by the people. He personally chooses and appoints all Ministers. The Law making is still done by the Legislature (called the Congress in the US), but the President can Veto any Law. Most importantly, the President does not need the support of the Majority of Members in the Congress and neither is he answerable to them. He has a fixed tenure of four years and completes it even if his party does not have a majority in the Congress.

This model is followed in most of the countries of Latin America and many of the Ex-soviet Union countries. Given the Centrality of the President, this System of Government is called the Presidential Form of Government. In Countries like ours that follow the British Model, the Parliament is Supreme. Therefore, Our System is called the Parliamentary System of Government.

**Q. 1. Directions :** In the following question, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as :

- (A) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- (B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

**Assertion(A) :** Presidents all over the World are always Nominal Executives like the President of India.

**Reason (R) :** In many countries of the World, the President is both the Head of the State and the Head of the Government.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Presidents all over the World are not always Nominal Executives like the President of India.

**Q. 2. \_\_\_\_\_ is both the Head of the State and the Head of the Government.**

- (A) US President
- (B) Indian President
- (C) UK President
- (D) Nepal President

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Q. 3. Consider the incorrect option regarding the Power of US President.**

- (A) The US President is Directly Elected by the People.
- (B) He personally chooses and appoints all Ministers.
- (C) The President need the support of the Majority of Members in the Congress and neither is he answerable to them.
- (D) The President is not answerable to Members in the Congress.

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Most importantly, the President does not need the support of the Majority of Members in the Congress and neither is he answerable to them. He has a fixed tenure of four years and completes it even if his Party does not have a majority in the Congress.

**Q. 4. India follows .**

- (A) The Presidential form of Government
- (B) The Parliamentary System of Government

(C) Monarchy

(D) Authoritarian

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Q. 5. Latin America and many of the Ex-Soviet Union Countries follows.**

- (A) The Presidential Form of Government
- (B) The Parliamentary System of Government
- (C) Monarchy
- (D) Authoritarian

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**



## (B) SUBJECTIVE QUESTIONS



### Short Answer Type Questions

(3 Marks Each)

**Q. 1. "The Indira Sawhney and others Versus Union of India Case", was filed in which concern? Describe it.**

[A] (Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans. (i)** The Second Backward Classes Commission in India was established in 1979 by the Janata Party Government under the then Prime Minister Morarji Desai. It was headed by Indian Parliamentarian B.P. Mandal. Hence, it was popularly known as the Mandal Commission.  
**(ii)** The Commission was asked to determine the criteria to identify the Socially and Educationally Backward Classes in India and recommend steps for their advancement.  
**(iii)** The Commission gave its report in 1980 and made many recommendations. One of these was that 27% of Government Jobs be Reserved for the Socially and Economically Backward classes (SEBC). The Reservation issue was very strongly protested after the implementation of the Commission Report in 1990. People reacted vehemently because this decision affected thousands of Job Opportunities.

**(iv)** Some people felt that Reservations were necessary to Balance the inequality among people of different castes in India. Others felt that Reservations were unfair and would deny equal Opportunities to those who did not belong to Backward Communities. Following the Nation-wide outrage against the order and protest, a Court case was filed against the Order. These cases were grouped together by the Supreme Court and called the 'Indira Sawhney and others Versus the Union of India Case'. **(Any three)**  
 $(1 \times 3 = 3)$

**Q. 2. Give any Three Functions (or Responsibilities) of the Government.**

[R]

(Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans. (i)** Government Collects Taxes and uses it for Administration, Defence and Development Programmes.  
**(ii)** Government ensures security to the Citizens and provides facilities for Education and Health.  
**(iii)** It formulates and implements several Welfare Schemes.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011]  $1 \times 3 = 3$

### Commonly Made Error

- Students mostly mentioned the Features of the Government when asked about the Functions of the Government.

### Answering Tip

- Government Collects Taxes, ensures security of Citizens and implements Welfare Schemes.

**Q. 3. "The Lok Sabha controls the Council of Ministers."**  
**Justify this statement.** [K] (Board Term II, 2017)

**Ans. (i)** Only a person who enjoys the support of the Majority of the Members in the Lok Sabha is appointed as the Prime Minister.  
**(ii)** If the Majority of the Lok Sabha Members say they have "No Confidence" in the Council of Ministers, then all the Ministers including the Prime Minister have to quit.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017]  
 $1\frac{1}{2} + 1\frac{1}{2} = 3$

**Q. 4. Describe the Role played by the Contemporary Prime Minister of India in the Implementation of the Mandal Commission Report.** [A]

(Board 2015, Term II)

**Ans. (i)** The Prime Minister informed the Parliament about the decision through a Statement in both the Houses of Parliament.  
**(ii)** The decision of the Cabinet was sent to the Department of Personnel and Training.  
**(iii)** The Senior Officers of the Department drafted an order in Line with the Cabinet decision and took the Minister's approval. **(1×3=3)**

### Commonly Made Error

- It is assumed by students that the Mandal Commission was established by the Congress Party.

### Answering Tip

- Students should know that the Mandal Commission was established by the Janata Party Government under Prime Minister Morarji Desai.

**Q. 5. Define the Parliament and the Legislature of India and write any one important role of it.** [R]

(Board Term II, 2014, 2013)

**Ans.** (i) In India, a National Assembly of Elected Representatives who exercise Supreme Political Authority on behalf of the People is called the Parliament.

(ii) At the State Level, this is called Legislature or Legislative Assembly.

(iii) **One important role:** The Parliament is the final authority for making Laws in our Country.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2014] (1+1+1=3)

**Q. 6. Explain any three functions of Parliament. Why do we need a Parliament? (Board Term II, 2012)**

**Ans.** (i) Parliament is the Final Authority for making Laws.

(ii) It exercises control over the working of the Government.

(iii) It controls all the Money that Government have.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012] (1×3=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students are unable to understand the Functions of the Parliament.

#### Answering Tip

- Students should know that Parliament exercises control over the working and also controls Money of the Government.

**Q. 7. Who are the Ministers of States ? Write any two Functions of them. (Board Term II, 2017)**

**Ans.** Ministers of States with Independent charge are usually in charge of Smaller Ministries.

(i) They participate in the Cabinet Meetings only.

(ii) They are attached to and required to assist the respective Cabinet Minister.

(iii) They look after the Ministry to which attached.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017] (1+2=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students always confuse between the Minister of Union and the Minister of State.

#### Answering Tip

- Ministers of State participate in Cabinet Meetings and look after the Ministry to which they are attached.

**Q. 8. Why does the Political Executive have more powers than the Permanent Executive? Give any three reasons. (Board Term II, 2016)**

**Ans.** (i) Every Minister is the Representative of the People and empowered to exercise the Will of the People on their Behalf.

(ii) She/He is finally answerable to the People for all the decisions.

(iii) The Ministers take the advice of the Experts on All Technical Matters and decides according to the Overall Objective. (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016]

**Q. 9. Mention any three Discretionary Powers of the Indian President. [A] (Board Term II, 2016)**

**Ans.** (i) The Administration of whole Country is carried on his name. He is the Supreme Commander of Armed Forces.

(ii) He appoints the Prime Minister, the Chief Justice of India, Governors of the States, Judges of Supreme Court and High Courts, the Election Commissioners, Ambassadors to other countries, etc.

(iii) There is one very important thing he should do on his own, i.e., Appoint the Prime Minister. When a Party or Coalition of Parties secures a Clear Majority in the Elections, the President has to appoint the Leader of the Majority Party or the Coalition that enjoys majority support in the Lok Sabha. When No Party or Coalition gets a Majority in the Lok Sabha, the President exercises his discretion. The President appoints a Leader who in his opinion can muster majority support in the Lok Sabha. In such a case, the President can ask the Newly Appointed Prime Minister to prove Majority support in the Lok Sabha within a specified time. (1×3=3)

**Q. 10. How are the Ministers in the Council of Ministers categorized according to their Rank? [U] (Board Term II, 2013)**

OR

Explain the Composition of the Union Council of Ministers. (Board Term II, 2012)

OR

Explain the Composition of the Council of Ministers. (Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.** The Union Council of Ministers comprises of the three categories of Ministers. These are:

(i) **Cabinet Ministers:** They constitute the inner ring of the Council of Ministers. These are the Top-level Leaders of the Ruling Party/Parties who are Incharge of the important Ministries. They usually meet to take decisions in the name of the Council of Ministers.

(ii) **Ministers of State with Independent Charge:** They are usually incharge of Smaller Ministries. They participate in the Cabinet Meetings only when they are invited.

(iii) **Ministers of State :** They are attached to and are required to assist the Cabinet Ministers.

(iv) It is headed by the Prime Minister. (Any three) [CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013] (1×3=3)

**Commonly Made Error**

- Students always get confuse about the Council of Minister.

**Answering Tip**

- Students must know that the Three Categories of Ministers include Cabinet Ministers, Ministers of State with Independent Charge and Ministers of State.

**Q. 11. What is a Coalition Government? Why the Prime Minister of a Coalition Government cannot take decisions as he likes?** R

(Board Term II, 2011)

**OR**

**What is a Coalition Government? Mention any two Limitations of a Coalition Government.**

**Ans.** Coalition Government is formed by an Alliance of two or more Political Parties usually when no Single Party enjoys Majority support of the Members in the Legislature.

**Limitations:**

- The Prime Minister has to accommodate different Groups and Sections in his Party as well as among his Alliance Partners.
- He also has to heed to the views and positions of Coalition Partners and Other Parties, on whose support the Survival of the Government depends.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011] (1+2=3)

**Q. 12. What is the Tenure of the President in India? Mention the Qualifications for President of India.**

U (Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.** His Tenure is for five years.

- The President in India is the Head of the State. He has only nominal powers.
- The President of India is like the Queen of Britain whose functions are to a large extent Ceremonial.
- The President Supervises the overall functioning of all the Political Institutions in the Country. The President exercises all his powers on the Advice of the Council of Ministers. (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011]

**Commonly Made Error**

- Students always gets confused between President and Vice-President.

**Answering Tip**

- Students should know that President's Tenure is of 5 years and he is the Head of the Country with Nominal Powers.

**Q. 13. Under what conditions can a State of Emergency be declared in India? Explain.**

U (Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans. A State of Emergency can be declared under the following conditions:**

- Increase of External aggression or Armed rebellion.
- If the Government Machinery of a State breaks down.
- If there is a threat to the Financial stability of the Country. Under these circumstances the President can impose a State of Emergency and this is called President's Rule. (1×3=3)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011]

**Commonly Made Error**

- Students are unable to understand the topic of Emergency.

**Answering Tip**

- Students should know that Emergency is declared at the time of threat to the financial stability of the Country and increase of external aggression.

**Q. 14. Why is the Indian Judiciary considered one of the most powerful in the World? Give any three reasons.** U

(Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** (i) Once a person is appointed as Judge of the Supreme Court or High Court, it is nearly impossible to remove him/her from that position.  
(ii) A Judge can be moved only by an Impeachment Motion.  
(iii) The Supreme Court and the High Court have the Power to Interpret the Constitution of the country.  
Therefore, it is one of the most powerful Judiciary in the world. (1×3=3)

**Commonly Made Error**

- Students are unable to mention the reason for Indian Judiciary to be Most Powerful.

**Answering Tip**

- In the Indian Judiciary, Supreme Court and High Court have the Power to Interpret the Constitution of the Country.

**Q. 15. What is meant by the Independence of the Judiciary? Explain.** U

(Board Term II, 2013, 2012)

**Ans. Independence of the Judiciary :**

- Judiciary is not under the control of the Legislature or the Executive.
- The Judges do not act on the Direction of the Government or according to the wishes of the Party in Power.
- The Constitution of India provides the Security to the Service of the Judges. Once appointed by the President, their service cannot be terminated by will or by any authority whatever.

- (iv) There is a Security of pay and allowances of the Judges. Their Salaries cannot be reduced.
- (v) The Supreme Court and the High Courts are free to decide their own Procedure of Work and Establishment.
- (vi) Judges are not allowed to practice after Retirement so that they cannot influence Judgements of the Court. **(Any three)**

[CBSE Marking Scheme 2012, 2013] (1×3=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- It is thought by the students that the Judiciary in India has no connection with the Constitution of India.

#### Answering Tip

- The framework of the current Legal System in India has been laid by the Constitution of India and the Judiciary System derives its Powers from it.

**Q. 16. Write about the Process of Appointment and Removal of a Judge of the Supreme Court.** [A]

**Ans.** The Judges of the Supreme Court and the High Courts are appointed by the President on the Advice of the Prime Minister and in Consultation with the Chief Justice of India. In practice the Senior Judges of the Supreme Court select the New Judges of the Supreme Court.

A Judge can be removed only by an Impeachment Motion passed separately by Two-third Members of the Two Houses of the Parliament.



#### Long Answer Type Questions

(5 Marks Each)

**Q. 1. Explain the need of Political Institutions.** [U]  
(Board 2017, Term II)

- Ans.** (i) Security of its Citizens.
- (ii) Law and order.
- (iii) Justice.
- (iv) Welfare activities.
- (v) Various decisions are taken and implemented for the Welfare of the People by the Institutions.

(1×5=5)

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017]

#### Detailed Answer :

Governing a century involves activities :

- (i) The government is responsible for ensuring security to the citizen.
- (ii) It is responsible for providing facilities for education and health to all.
- (iii) It collects taxes and spends the money thus raised on administration, defence and development programmes.
- (iv) The government is responsible to maintain law and order; it implements laws in all fields; to settle disputes and serve justice.
- (v) It is responsible to formulate and implement several welfare schemes.

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students mostly mention types of Political Institutions and their work in this question.

#### Answering Tip

- Students need to know that Political Institutions are required for the Security of its Citizens, Law and Order, Justice, Welfare activities, etc.

**Q. 2. Analyse the reaction of the people after the implementation of Mandal Commission Report.** [A] (Board Term II, 2013)

**Ans.** It led to widespread protests, some of which were violent. People reacted strongly because this decision affected thousands of Job Opportunities.

(i) The people felt this would give fair opportunity to those Communities who had not been represented in Government Employment.

(ii) Some felt that this was unfair as it would deny equality of opportunity to those who did not belong to Backward Communities.

(iii) They would be denied jobs even if they were qualified.

(iv) Some felt that this would arouse Caste feelings.

(v) Others felt that this situation would lead to Social Division and weaker National Unity.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2014]

(1×5=5)

**Q. 3. Differentiate between Political Executive and Permanent Executive. Which Executive is more Powerful?** [A] (Board Term II, 2012)

#### Ans. Political Executive:

- (i) It is Elected by the People for a specified period.
- (ii) Political Executive is more Powerful than Permanent Executive.

(iii) The Ministers of Political Executives are elected by the People, so they are answerable to the people for their work. That's why, the Ministers take all the Final decisions.

#### Permanent Executive:

(i) In the second category, people are appointed on a long-term basis, who are called Permanent Executives.

(ii) Officials working in Civil Services are called Civil Servants. They are also called Bureaucrats.

(iii) They remain in Office even when the Ruling Party changes. These Officers work under the Political Executive and assist them in carrying out day to day Administration.

Thus, a Political Executive is more powerful.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012](5)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students are unable to understand the difference between Political Executive and Permanent Executive.

#### Answering Tip

- Students should mention the definition and the features of Political and Permanent Executives.

**AI** Q. 4. Describe the Election Procedure of the Two Houses of Indian Parliament. List three areas where Lok Sabha enjoys Supreme Powers. **A** (Board Term II 2013, 2012)

OR

In which three ways is the Lok Sabha more powerful than the Rajya Sabha?  
(Board Term II, 2013)

OR

How does the Lok Sabha exercise Supreme Power over the Rajya Sabha? Explain.  
(Board Term II, 2012)

OR

Which House of the Parliament is More Powerful in India and why? Give any three reasons to justify your answer.  
(Board Term II, 2011)

OR

Compare the powers of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.  
**R** (Board Term II, 2016)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students are unable to differentiate between Features and Powers of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.

#### Answering Tip

- Discuss the Features and Powers of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.

Q. 5. Compare the position of the Prime Minister of the Majority party (Ruling) and the Prime Minister of the Coalition Government. (Board Term II, 2017)

Ans. (i) Prime Minister of the Majority Party is the Head of the Government.

(ii) Prime Minister exercises Enormous Authority. He is Indirectly Elected. In fact, he is Appointed by the President.

(iii) The Powers of the Prime Minister in all Parliamentary Democracies of the World have increased so much in era continued. In recent decades these Parliamentary Democracies are sometimes seen as Prime Minister form of Government.

(iv) In recent years, the Coalition Government has changed the position of Prime Minister. Now under Coalition Government, a Prime Minister cannot decide as he likes.

(v) He has to accommodate views of Different Groups and Factions in his Party as well as among the Alliance Partners on whose support the Survival of the Government depends.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017] (1×5=5)

Q. 6. Describe how the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers are appointed. **A**

(Board Term II, 2016)

Ans. (i) The President appoints the Leader of the Majority Party or the Coalition of Parties that commands a Majority in the Lok Sabha, as Prime Minister.

(ii) In case no Single Party or Alliance gets a majority, the President appoints the person most likely to secure the majority support.

(iii) The President appoints other Ministers on the Advice of the Prime Minister.

(iv) The Ministers are usually from the Party or the Coalition that has the Majority in the Lok Sabha.

(v) The Prime Minister is free to choose Ministers as they are Members of Parliament. A Person who is not a Member of Parliament can also become a Minister, but he has to get Elected to one of the Houses of Parliament within six months of Appointment as Minister.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1×5=5)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Student always get confused about the Appointment of Ministers.

**Answering Tip**

- Students should know that President appoints Prime Minister and the Prime Minister further Recommends the Ministers for his Council of Ministers who are further appointed by the President of India.

**Q. 7. How can you say that the President occupies the Position of a Nominal Head of the State?** R  
**(Board Term II, 2015)**

- Ans.** (i) The President is not Elected Directly by the People. She or he can never claim the kind of Direct popular mandate that the Prime Minister can.  
(ii) This ensures that she or he remains only a Nominal Executive.  
(iii) The Constitution gives vast powers to the President. But the latter exercises them only on the Advice of the Council of Ministers.  
(iv) The President can ask the Council of Ministers to reconsider its advice. But if the same advice is given again, she or he is bound to act according to it. Similarly, when a Bill comes to the President for signatures she or he can return it to the Parliament with her or his advice.  
(v) But when the Bill comes for his/her signatures again, then she or he has to sign it, whether the Parliament agrees to her/his advice or not. (1×5=5)

**Q. 8. Give any three differences between the Cabinet Ministers and the Minister of States.** U  
**(Board Term II, 2014)**

**Ans. Cabinet Ministers :**

- They are usually Top-level Leaders of the Ruling Party or Parties.
- Cabinet Ministers meet to take decisions in the name of the Council of Ministers.
- They are In-charge of the Major Ministries.

**Ministers of State :**

- They are usually In-charge of Smaller Ministries with Independent charge.
- They participate in the Cabinet Meetings only when specially invited.
- They are attached to and required to assist Cabinet Ministers.

**Q. 9. "Prime Minister is the most important Political Institution in the Country". Justify the statement.** A  
**(Board Term II, 2013)**

**OR**

**Explain the Position of the Prime Minister with reference to his/her Powers and Functions.**  
**(Board Term II, 2012)**

**OR**

**Describe any Five Powers and Functions of the Prime Minister of India.**  
**(Board Term II, 2011)**

**Ans. Position :** The Prime Minister is the most important Political Institution of the Country. He/she is the Head of the Government and all important decisions regarding the Country are taken by him/her. He/she enjoys the Real Executive Powers as Head of the State.

**Powers and Functions of Prime Minister :**

- Allocation of Departments and Formation of Council of Ministers, their Distribution of Portfolios.
  - Being the Chairman of the Cabinet, Prime Minister Presides the Meetings of the Cabinet.
  - Link between the President and Cabinet.
  - Leader of the Nation.
  - Ex-officio Chairman of the Planning Commission.
- (1×5=5)

**Commonly Made Error**

- Students are not able to explain the Powers and Functions of the Prime Minister.

**Answering Tip**

- The Prime Minister of India is the Head of the Government and he/she is the responsible for taking important decisions regarding the Country.

**Q. 10. What is the Election Process of the President of India? Mention the Main Powers and Functions of the President of India.** A  
**(Board Term II, 2012)**

**OR**

**Write any Five Executive Powers of President of India.**  
**(Board Term II, 2011)**

**Ans.** The President of India is Elected Indirectly. All the Elected Members of Both the Houses of Parliament as well as the State Legislative Assemblies elect the President.

**Powers and functions of the President :**

- Administration of the whole Country is carried on in his name.
- He appoints the Prime Minister, Central Ministers, Governors of the States and Judges of Supreme Court and High Courts.
- Supreme Commander of the Indian Defence Forces.
- He receives the Credentials of Ambassadors from other Countries.
- The Administration of Union Territories is the responsibility of the President.
- The scope of the Executive Authority of the President is enlarged when the Country is placed under a General Emergency.

(Any five)

**[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2012] (1×5=5)**

**Q. 11. What is 'Collective Responsibility'? Describe its significance.** A (Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.** In a Parliamentary System of Government, the Principles and Ideals of Collective Responsibility are of much importance. It means that the Council of Ministers is Collectively Responsible to the Parliament.

If the Parliament rejects the Policy of the Government or passes a No-confidence Motion against Ministers the whole Council of Ministers have to resign.

[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011]  
( $2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5$ )

**Q. 12. Write an article on the Functions and the Powers of Judiciary in India.** A (Board Term II, 2016)

OR

**Describe the Powers of the Supreme Court.** (Board Term II, 2014)

OR

**What is meant by Integrated Judiciary? Explain the jurisdiction of the Supreme Court of India. Mention any three points.**

(Board Term II, 2012)

OR

**Describe any Three Jurisdictions of the Supreme Court in India.** (Board Term II, 2012)

**Ans.** (i) All the Courts at different levels in a Country put together are called a Judiciary. The Indian Judiciary consists of the Supreme Court for the Entire Nation, High Courts and the Courts at the Local Level.

(ii) Supreme Court controls the Judicial Administration in the Country. Its decisions are binding on all other Courts of the Country.

**It can take up any dispute :**

- (a) Between Citizens of the Country.
- (b) Between two or more State Governments.
- (c) Between Citizens and the Government.
- (d) Between Governments at the Union and State level.

**Powers :**

- (i) The Supreme Court and the High Courts have the Power to Interpret the Constitution of the Country.
- (ii) It can hear Appeals against the decisions of the High Courts.
- (iii) It acts as the Guardian of the Fundamental Rights.
- (iv) It controls the Judicial Administration in the Country.
- (v) It is the Highest Court of Appeal in Civil and Criminal Cases.

(1+4=5)



**@NtseBookCorner**  
Join Us On Telegram



## UNIT-4 : Economics

CHAPTER

## 8

## POVERTY AS A CHALLENGE

## Syllabus

- Two typical cases of Poverty
- Poverty as seen by Social Scientists
- Poverty Estimates
- Vulnerable Groups
- Interstate Disparities
- Global Poverty Scenario
- Causes of Poverty
- Anti-Poverty Measures
- The Challenges Ahead



## Learning Outcomes

- Understand poverty as a challenge.
- Identify vulnerable group and interstate disparities.
- Appreciate the initiatives of the government to alleviate poverty.

Join Us On Telegram

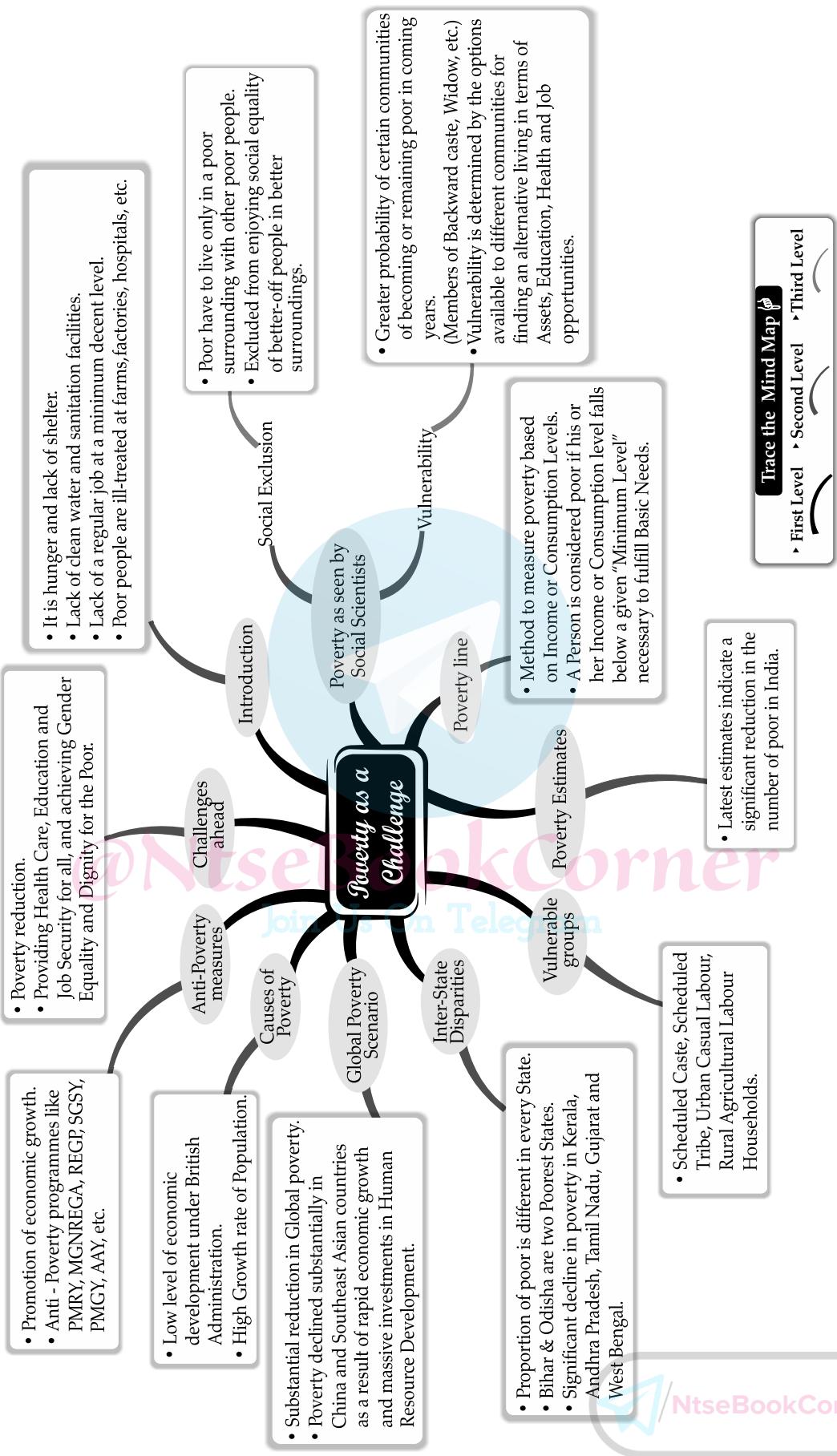
## Revision Notes

## Poverty—Introduction, Indicators and Estimates

- Poverty can be defined as the lack of common things like food, clothing, shelter, safe drinking water, medical care and education, which determine the Quality of Life. Nearly 25% of our entire population lives in Poverty. Poverty exists in both Urban and Rural areas of India.
- There are certain things that are common in the Life of poor people in Urban and Rural India. These include Hunger and Malnutrition, Lack of Proper Housing and Shelter, No Healthcare in case of illness and no regular Job and Income, Lack of Sanitation and Safe Drinking Water, No Education for children, Hopelessness and Ill-treatment.
- Social Scientists use different types of Indicators to understand Poverty. The most commonly-used Indicators related to the Levels of Income of People and their Consumption of Goods.
- Poverty is looked through other social Indicators like Illiteracy level, Lack of General resistance due to Malnutrition, lack of access to Health Care, lack of Job Opportunities, lack of access to Safe Drinking Water, Sanitation, etc.
- The concept of social exclusion states that poor people have to live in poor surroundings excluded from neighbourhoods of people who are better off. Social exclusion leads to lack of social equality and exclusion from facilities, benefits and Opportunities enjoyed by others.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topic

Poverty line



- Social exclusion can be both an effect and a cause of Poverty. A person may be forced to live in poor surroundings, because he or she is poor. Social exclusion excludes people from equal Opportunities of Education, Healthcare, Employment and General Quality of Life. Vulnerability is the measure of the probability of certain groups of people becoming poor or remaining poor in future.
  - Vulnerability to Poverty is a measure, which describes the greater probability of certain Communities (say, Members of a Backward Caste) or Individuals (such as a Widow or a Physically Handicapped Person) of becoming or remaining poor in the coming years.
  - Vulnerability is determined by the availability of options for Employment, Education, Healthcare, etc. It is also determined by the ability of people to handle hard times and natural disasters like Earthquakes, Floods and Tsunamis. Poor people are more vulnerable to Poverty.
- **Poverty Line and Vulnerable groups (Indicators)**
- When the Income or Consumption of a Person falls below this Minimum Level, the Person is considered to be poor. The minimum levels of requirement to determine the Poverty Line are different in different countries. In India, the Determination of the Poverty line takes into consideration the Minimum Requirements of Food, Clothing, Footwear, Fuel, Power, Education and Healthcare for the subsistence of an individual.
  - Minimum requirement of food is done by taking the Minimum Calorie Requirement into consideration. In India, the Minimum Daily Requirement is fixed at 2,400 calories per person in Rural areas and 2,100 calories per person in Urban areas.
  - The cost of each item in the minimum requirements of Food, Clothing, Footwear, Fuel, power, Education and Healthcare is added up to find the Minimum Income required for a Person to survive. In the year 2011-12, the Monthly Poverty Line Income was fixed at 1000 rupees per Person in Rural areas and 816 rupees per Person in Urban areas.
  - Though the Calorie requirement for the people in Rural areas is more, their Poverty Line Income is less than the people in Urban areas. The Poverty Line Income is fixed on per person basis. To find the Poverty Line for a Family, this Monthly Income is divided by the Number of Members in the Family.
  - The Poverty Line is revised periodically to accommodate Rising Prices and the changing requirements of people through Nationwide Surveys conducted by the National Sample Survey Organization. The percentage of population living under Poverty Line in India has reduced. Percentage of poor in Rural areas is higher than that in Urban areas. Some groups and communities are more vulnerable to Poverty than others.
  - The groups most vulnerable to Poverty are people belonging to the scheduled castes and tribes, casual labourers in Urban areas and landless farm labourers in Rural areas.
  - Even within a Family, some people are more vulnerable and suffer more than the others due to Poverty, like the elderly, women and children, especially the girls. One of the biggest social evils associated with Poverty is negligence towards the girl child.
- **Estimates of Poverty :** The incidence of Poverty in India was around 45 per cent in 1993-94 which declined to 37.2 per cent in 2004-05 and further to 22 per cent in 2011-12.
- **Inter-state Disparities and Global Poverty Scenario**
- Poverty in India also has another aspect or dimension. The proportion of poor people is not the same in every state. Although state level Poverty has witnessed a secular decline from the levels of early seventies. The success rate of reducing Poverty varies from state to state.
  - The Poverty ratio or the percentage of population living in Poverty is not uniform all over the Country. It varies across different states.
  - Odisha with a Poverty ratio of 32.6 percent and Bihar with a Poverty ratio of 33.7 percent are the two poorest states in India. The Poverty ratios in Madhya Pradesh, Assam, Tripura and Uttar Pradesh are also much higher.
  - The states that have shown the most significant decline in Poverty are Punjab, Haryana, Gujarat, West Bengal, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu and Kerala. The decline in Poverty in Punjab and Haryana was driven by high agricultural growth rates after the Green Revolution in India.
  - In West Bengal, the decline in Poverty is associated with land reforms that aimed to improve the condition of small farmers and agricultural workers. In Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu, a well-implemented public distribution system of food grains is the cause of the decline in Poverty.
  - Kerala has the highest literacy rate in India for both its male and female population. The focus on Education and Training and Development of Human Resources has led to the decline of Poverty of Kerala.
- **Global Scenario :**
- The proportion of people in developing countries living in extreme economic Poverty— defined by the World Bank as living on less than \$1.90 per day—has fallen from 36 per cent in 1990 to 10 per cent in 2015.
  - Poverty has declined in most regions of the World like China, and southeast Asian countries. Poverty in China, East Asia and Pacific regions have declined more rapidly than in South Asia. The rapid decline in Poverty in China, southeast Asian countries is associated with rapid economic growth and huge investments in Human Resource Development in these regions.

Scan to know  
more about  
this topic



Global Poverty  
Scenario

- In Sub-Saharan Africa, Poverty in fact rose from 51 per cent in 2005 to 40.2 per cent in 2018. In Latin America, the ratio of Poverty remained the same. It has declined from 10% in 2005 to 4 % in 2018. Poverty has also resurfaced in some of the former socialist countries like Russia, where officially it was non-existent earlier.
- The Poverty ratio for India as per the World Bank standard appears higher than our National estimate of 26%. In the United Nations Millennium Summit held in September 2002, leaders from 189 countries signed a declaration pledging to reduce the number of people living below \$1 a day to half of its 1990 figure by 2015.
- **Causes of Poverty anti-Poverty Measure and the Challenges Ahead**
- The main causes of Poverty in India include low economic growth during the colonial rule, population explosion, lack of job Opportunities, irregular low-paying Employment, inequitable distribution of Resources and indebtedness.
- Anti-Poverty measures taken by the Indian Government are based on two main objectives : Increasing economic growth in the Country and launching anti-Poverty programmes for specific groups of people. Economic growth provides more Resources and Opportunities for Human Resource Development like Education, Training and Healthcare.
- The Government of India has launched several Anti-Poverty Programmes like the Prime Minister Rozgar Yojna, Rural Employment Guarantee Programme and Swarnajayanti Gram Swarozgar Yojna which are aimed at generating Self-employment Opportunities in Rural areas.
- The Prime Minister Rozgar Yojna was launched in 1993 to create self-employment Opportunities for Educated, Unemployed Youths in Rural areas and Small Towns. This Programme assists such people in setting up small Industries and Business.
- The Rural Employment Guarantee Programme launched in 1995 also aims to generate self-Employment Opportunities in Rural areas and small towns. The Swarnajayanti Gram Swarozgar Yojna started in 1999 aims at organising poor families into self-help groups and providing them Bank Loans and Government subsidies to start small Businesses and Industries.
- The Antyodaya Anna Yojna was started in 2000 to provide food grain to poor families at subsidised rates. The National Food for Work Programme was launched in 2004 in the 150 most Backward districts of the Country. The National Rural Employment Guarantee Act was passed in 2005. This act provides assured Employment of 100 days per year to every Household in Rural areas. One-third of these jobs are Reserved for Women.
- Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005 (MGNREGA) aims to provide 100 days of wage Employment to every Household to ensure livelihood security in Rural areas.
- A Person not provided Employment within 15 days of registering under the National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, is entitled to a Daily Unemployment Allowance.
- Human Poverty extends beyond the Traditional definition of Poverty to include lack of Housing, Education, Healthcare, Job security and Lack of Equal Opportunities or Dignity, due to discrimination based on Caste, Colour or Gender.
- India's future in combating Poverty appears bright. Rising economic growth, falling population growth rate, radical schemes for free elementary Education for all and empowerment of women and the weaker sections of society, should result in an appreciable reduction of Poverty in the years to come.

## Know the Terms

- **Poor :** A poor person is the one who is lacking sufficient money to live at a standard considered comfortable or normal level in a Society. Some of the examples of poor people are : Daily Wage Workers at construction sites, child Labourers in Dhabas, Rickshaw pullers, Domestic servants, Cobblers, Beggars, etc.
- **Poverty Line :** It is a measure based on levels of Income and Consumption by People to identify poor. The concept of Poverty Line is based on the fact that a person must have a minimum level of Income and Consumption to satisfy the basic needs of Food, Clothing, Clean water, Education and Healthcare.
- **Inter-state disparities :** The proportion of poor people is not the same in every state. In 20 States and Union Territories, the Poverty Ratio is less than the National Average. Odisha and Bihar are the Poorest States of India with Poverty Ratios of 32.6 percent and 33.7 percent respectively. The Lowest Incidence of Poverty is found in Jammu and Kashmir with Poverty ratio of just 3.5 per cent.
- **Global Poverty scenario :** There has been a substantial decline in global Poverty. However, it is marked with great regional differences. Poverty has declined more in China and South-East Asian Countries.
- **Swarnajayanti Gram Swarozgar Yojana (SGSY) :** SGSY was started in 1999. The Programme aims at bringing the assisted poor families above the Poverty Line.

- **Pradhan Mantri Gramodaya Yojana (PMGY)** : It was launched in 2000.
- **National Food for Work Programme (NFWP)** : It was launched in 2004.
- **National Rural Employment Guarantee Act (NREGA)** : It was passed in September 2005 and implemented on February 2, 2006. The Act provides 100-days assured Employment every year to every Rural Household in 625 districts initially but now extends to all districts of India.



## (A) OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

**1 Mark Each**



### Stand Alone MCQs

- Q. 1. What is meant by Social Exclusion?** U
- (A) Process by which all individuals are excluded from certain privileges.
  - (B) Process by which all individuals are given privileges.
  - (C) Process in which Individual or Groups are excluded from facilities and Opportunities that is enjoyed by the General people.
  - (D) None of these.

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Social Inclusion is a process in which Individual or Groups are excluded from facilities and Opportunities that is enjoyed by the General people.

- Q. 2. Name a method to estimate Poverty Line in India.** A

- (A) Expenditure method
- (B) Income method
- (C) Both (A) and (B)
- (D) Demand and supply

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** A common method used to estimate Poverty in India is based on the Income or Consumption levels and if the Income or consumption falls below a given Minimum level, then the Household is said to be Below the Poverty Line (BPL).

- Q. 3. Which of these factors can affect the Poverty Line?** U+A+C

- (A) Decrease in the price of commodities
- (B) Decrease in the price of services
- (C) Increase in the price of commodities
- (D) Increase in the price of services

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

- Q. 4. When was National Rural Employment Guarantee Act passed?** R

- (A) In August 2008
- (B) In August 2014
- (C) In August 2005
- (D) In August 1995

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Indian Parliament passed the Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act on 23rd August 2005.

- Q. 5. NSSO stands for.**

- (A) National Sample Survey Organisation
- (B) National Sampling Survey Organisation
- (C) National Sample Survey Organised
- (D) National Sample Surveyed Organisation

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

- Q. 6. Who do not come under the category of Urban Poor?** R

- (A) Landlords
- (B) Shopkeepers
- (C) Farmers
- (D) Technicians

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

- Q. 7. In how many districts was NFWP initially launched?** R

- (A) 180 Districts
- (B) 250 Districts
- (C) 150 Backward Districts
- (D) 370 Backward Districts

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The National Food for Work Programme(NFWP), 2004 was launched by Minister of Rural Development, Central Government on 14th November 2004 in 150 of the most Backward Districts of India with the objective of generating Supplementary Wage Employment.

- Q. 8. Who advocated that India would be truly Independent only when the Poorest of its people become free of Human suffering?** R

- (A) Mahatma Gandhi
- (B) Rajeev Gandhi
- (C) Indira Gandhi
- (D) B.R. Ambedkar

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** One of the biggest challenges of Independent India has been to bring millions of its people out of abject Poverty. Mahatma Gandhi always insisted that India would be truly Independent only when the Poorest of its people become free of Human suffering.

- Q. 9. Which Industry suffered the most during the Colonial Period?** R

- (A) Agriculture
- (B) Raw Materials
- (C) Textiles
- (D) Manufacturing

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** During the Colonial Period, the Small Cotton and Textile Industry suffered the most.

**Q. 10. When was the Prime Minister Rozgar Yojana started?** R

- (A) In 1991                    (B) In 1990  
 (C) In 1993                    (D) In 1995

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** PMRY full form is Pradhan Mantri Rozgar Yojana which was launched in 1993 with the aim of providing Self-employment to India's Educated Youth and Women.

**Q. 11. Which of these States has Maximum Poverty?** R

- (A) Punjab                    (B) Haryana  
 (C) Bihar                    (D) Himachal Pradesh

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Q. 12. Give the full form of REGP.** R

- (A) Rural Employment Generation Programme  
 (B) Rural Employed Generation Programme.  
 (C) Rural Employment Generating Programme.  
 (D) Rural Engaged Generation Programme.

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** The Rural Employment Generation Programme was launched in 1995. The aim of the Programme is to create Self-employment Opportunities in Rural areas and small Towns.

**Q. 13. Which part of the World shows an increased trend in Poverty?** R + C.E

- (A) African region            (B) Sub-Saharan Africa  
 (C) Asian region            (D) Both (B) & (C)

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa are the regions where there is an increasing trend in Poverty.

**Q. 14. Which Country of South-East Asia made rapid economic growth?** R

- (A) India                    (B) China  
 (C) Nepal                    (D) Pakistan

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** China of South-East Asia made rapid economic growth.

**Q. 15. The Calorie requirement is higher in the Rural areas because.** R

- (A) They do not enjoy as much as people in the Urban areas.  
 (B) Food items are expensive.  
 (C) They are engaged in mental work.  
 (D) People are engaged in physical labour

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** People in Rural areas require more calories because they do more physical work. The main occupation of the people in Rural areas is Farming which requires strenuous physical activity.



### Assertion and Reason Based MCQs

**Directions :** In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as :

- (A) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).  
 (B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).  
 (C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.  
 (D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

**Q. 1. Assertion (A) :** Poverty means Hunger and lack of shelter.

**Reason (R) :** Poverty is living with a sense of hopelessness. U

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Q. 2. Assertion (A) :** Social scientists look at Poverty through variety of Indicators.

**Reason (R):** Poverty has many facets. U

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Q. 3. Assertion (A) :** Caste system is prevalent in Indian society.

**Reason (R):** Social exclusion reduces Poverty. U

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Q. 4. Assertion (A) :** People in Urban areas do more physical work.

**Reason (R):** Calorie requirement per person is more in Rural areas than Urban areas. U

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** People in Rural areas do more Physical work compare to Urban areas. So they need more Calories compare to Urban People

**Q. 5. Assertion (A) :** Mahatma Gandhi always insisted that India would be truly Independent only when the Poorest of its people become free of Human suffering.

**Reason (R) :** One of the biggest challenges of Independent India has been to bring millions of its people out of abject Poverty. U

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Q. 6. Assertion (A) :** A common method used to measure Poverty is based on Literacy.

**Reason (R):** The Poverty Line in India, a minimum level of food requirement, clothing, Footwear, fuel and light, Educational and medical requirement, etc. U

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** A common method used to measure Poverty is based on Income or Consumption levels. A person is considered poor if his or her Income or Consumption level falls below a given "Minimum Level" necessary to fulfill basic needs.



### Case-based MCQs

**I. Read the following text and answer the following questions on the basis of the same:**

The proportion of people below Poverty Line is also not same for all social groups and economic categories in India. Social groups which are most vulnerable to Poverty are Scheduled Caste and Scheduled Tribe Households. Similarly, among the economic groups, the most vulnerable groups are the Rural Agricultural Labour Households and the Urban casual labour Households. Although the average for people below Poverty Line for all groups in India is 30, 48 out of 100 people belonging to Scheduled Tribes in Rural areas are not able to meet their basic needs. Similarly, 47 per cent of Casual workers in Urban areas are below Poverty line. About 50 per cent of landless Agricultural Workers and 43 per cent of Scheduled Castes are also poor. The double disadvantage, of being a landless casual wage labour Household in the Socially Disadvantaged Social Groups of the Scheduled Caste or the Scheduled Tribe population highlights the seriousness of the problem. Some recent studies have shown that except for the scheduled tribe Households, all the other three groups (*i.e.*, Scheduled Castes, Rural Agricultural Labourers and the Urban Casual Labour Households) have seen a decline in Poverty in the 1990s.

Apart from these Social groups, there is also Inequality of Incomes within a Family. In poor families all suffer, but some suffer more than others. Women, elderly people and female infants are systematically denied equal access to Resources available to the Family. Therefore women, children (especially the girl child) and old people are Poorest of the Poor.

**Q. 1. Which Social groups are most vulnerable to Poverty in India?**

- (A) Scheduled caste      (B) Scheduled tribe.
- (C) Agricultural labour    (D) Both (A) and (B)

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Social groups which are most vulnerable to Poverty are scheduled caste and scheduled tribe Households.

**Q. 2. Which of the following statements is incorrect regarding the Poverty Line?**

- I. The average for people below Poverty Line for all groups in India is 30, 48 out of 100 people

belonging to Scheduled Tribes in Rural areas are not able to meet their basic needs.

**II. 74 per cent of Casual Workers in Urban areas are below Poverty Line.**

**III. About 50 per cent of Landless Agricultural Workers and 43 per cent of Scheduled Castes are also poor. Identify the incorrect option.**

- (A) I only                                 (B) II only
- (C) III only                                 (D) I and III

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** 47 per cent of casual workers in Urban areas are below Poverty line.

**Q. 3. Who are the Poorest of the Poor?**

- (A) Scheduled caste
- (B) Scheduled tribe
- (C) Agricultural labour
- (D) Women, children (especially the Girl child) and Old people.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Women, children, especially the Girl child and Elder people in a Poor Family are regarded as the Poorest of the Poor because they are systematically denied equal access to Resources available to the Family.

**Q. 4. Agricultural Labour Households and the Urban Casual Labour Households come under :**

- (A) most vulnerable economic groups
- (B) most vulnerable social groups
- (C) poorest of poor
- (D) scheduled tribe

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Among the economic groups, the most vulnerable groups are the Rural Agricultural Labour Households and the Urban Casual Labour Households.

**Q. 5. About \_\_\_\_\_ per cent of landless agricultural workers and 43 per cent of Scheduled Castes are also poor.**

- (A) 50                                         (B) 70
- (C) 30                                         (D) 80

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** About 50 per cent of landless agricultural workers and 43 per cent of Scheduled Castes are also poor.

**II. Read the following text and answer the following questions on the basis of the same:**

In our daily Life, we come across many people who we think are poor. They could be Landless Labourers in villages or people living in over-crowded Jhuggis in cities. They could be Daily Wage Workers at construction sites or Child Workers in Dhabas. They could also be Beggars with Children in tatters. We see Poverty all around us. In fact, every fourth person in India is poor. This means,

roughly 270 million (or 27 crore) people in India live in Poverty in 2011-12. This also means that India has the Largest Single Concentration of the Poor in the World. Since Poverty has many facets, Social Scientists look at it through a variety of Indicators. Usually the Indicators used relate to the levels of Income and Consumption. A Person is considered poor if his or her Income or Consumption level falls below a given "Minimum Level" necessary to fulfil basic needs. What is necessary to satisfy basic needs is different at different times and in different countries. Therefore, Poverty Line may vary with time and place. Each Country uses an imaginary Line that is considered appropriate for its existing level of Development and its accepted minimum social norms. The proportion of people below Poverty Line is also not same for all social groups and economic categories in India. In poor families all suffer, but some suffer more than others. Women, elderly people and female infants are systematically denied equal access to Resources available to the Family. Therefore Women, Children (especially the Girl child) and old people are Poorest of the Poor.

**Q. 1. What does Poverty means?**

[AE]

- (A) Poverty means Hunger and lack of shelter.
- (B) Poverty means where sick people cannot afford treatment.
- (C) Poverty means lack of clean water and sanitation facilities.
- (D) All of the above.

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Poverty means hunger and lack of Shelter. They lack in common things like Food, Shelter, Safe Drinking Water, Medical care, Sanitation and Education, which determines to Quality of life.

**Q. 2. Poverty is looked through other Social indicators like :**

- (A) Lack of job Opportunities
- (B) Lack of access to Safe Drinking Water, Sanitation.
- (C) Both (A) and (B)
- (D) None of the above

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Poverty is looked through other social Indicators like lack of Job Opportunities and Lack of access to safe drinking water, sanitation.

**Q. 3. In economic groups, the most vulnerable groups is :**

- (A) The Rural Agricultural Labour Household
- (B) Scheduled caste Household
- (C) Scheduled tribe Household
- (D) None of the above

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Among the economic groups, the most vulnerable group is the Rural Agricultural Labour Household.

**Q. 4. Who among the following in poor families suffer more than others?**

- (A) Women
- (B) Female infants
- (C) Elderly people
- (D) All of the above

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Explanation:** Women, Female infants and Elderly are considered to the Poorest of the Poor.

**III. Read the following text and answer the following questions on the basis of the same :**

Poverty in India also has another aspect or dimension. The proportion of poor people is not the same in every State. States like Madhya Pradesh, Assam, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar and Orissa had above all India Poverty level. Bihar and Orissa continue to be the two Poorest States with Poverty ratios. There has been a substantial reduction in Global Poverty. Poverty declined substantially in China and Southeast Asian countries as a result of rapid economic growth and massive investments in Human Resource Development. There were a number of causes for the widespread Poverty in India. One historical reason is the low level of economic Development under the British Colonial Administration. The Policies of the Colonial Government ruined Traditional Handicrafts and discouraged Development of Industries like Textiles. Removal of Poverty has been one of the major objectives of Indian Developmental Strategy. In these circumstances, there is a clear need for its existing level of Development and its accepted minimum social norms. The proportion of people below Poverty Line is also not same for all social groups and economic categories in India. In poor families all suffer, but some suffer more than others. Women, elderly people and Female infants are systematically denied equal access to Resources available to the Family. Therefore women, children (especially the Girl child) and Old people are Poorest of the Poor.

**Q. 1. In which year Swarnajayanti Gram Swarozgar Yojana (SGSY) was launched?**

[AE]

- (A) 1999
- (B) 2000
- (C) 2004
- (D) 1995

**Ans. Option (A) is correct.**

**Explanation:** SGSY was launched in 1999.

**Q. 2. The aim of which of the following programme is to create self-Employment Opportunities for educated unemployed youth in Rural areas and small towns:**

- (A) NREGA
- (B) PMRY
- (C) REGP
- (D) None of the above

**Ans. Option (B) is correct.**

**Explanation:** PMRY aimed at generating Self-employment opportunities in Rural areas and Small towns for educated unemployed youth.

**Q. 3. Which of the following States have traditionally succeeded in reducing Poverty with the help of high agricultural growth rates?**

- (A) Punjab                   (B) Haryana  
 (C) West Bengal           (D) Both (A) & (B)

**Ans. Option (D) is correct.**

**Q. 4. What was ruined by the Policies of the Colonial Government?**

- (A) Traditional handicrafts  
 (B) Textiles industries  
 (C) Both (A) and (B)  
 (D) None of the above

**Ans. Option (C) is correct.**



### Short Answer Type Questions

(3 Marks Each)

**AI Q. 1. "In poor families, all suffer, but some suffer more than others." Explain the statement.** U

(Board Term II, 2017)

**Ans.** Women, elderly people and Female infants are systematically denied equal access to Resources available to the Family.

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017) (3)

#### Detailed Answer:

Analysis of Poverty on the basis of Social Exclusion and vulnerability shows that there are people in our economy who suffer more than others. Socially excluded people due to Caste discrimination are excluded even from facilities, benefits and Opportunities that others enjoy. Vulnerability brings greater risks to the people at the time of natural disasters or terrorism, etc.

Vulnerable groups lack social and economic ability to handle risks.

**Q. 2. Which social and economic groups are more vulnerable to Poverty?** U

(Board Term II, 2017) (NCERT)

**Ans. (i)** Social groups which are most vulnerable to Poverty are Scheduled Caste and Scheduled Tribe Households.

**(ii)** Among the economic groups the most vulnerable group are the Rural Agricultural Labour Households.

**(iii)** In Urban areas the Casual Labour Households.

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017) (1×3=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students are not aware about vulnerable groups of Society.

#### Answering Tip

- Students should learn the vulnerable groups by classifying them into social and economic groups.

**Q. 3. List the main problems faced by the Poor People.**

R (Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans. (i)** Lack of food and shelter.

- Illiteracy.
- Lack of clean water and Sanitation facilities.
- Unemployment.
- Malnutrition.
- Helplessness.

(½×6=3)

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students are not aware of common problems faced by Poor people.

#### Answering Tip

- Students should learn the common problems by looking at the Real Scenario of Poor People.

**AI Q. 4. How is Poverty seen by Social Scientists? Explain.** U (Board Term II, 2016)

**OR**

**List the Indicators of Poverty.** R

(Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** Social Scientists use different types of Indicators to understand their consumption of goods. Poverty is also observed using other Social Indicators like lack of Education, Healthcare, Sanitation, Job Opportunity, Illiteracy level and Safe drinking Water.

Now Poverty is looked through other Indicators like Illiteracy Level, Lack of access to Health Care, lack of Job Opportunities, lack of access to Safe Drinking Water, Sanitation, etc. Nowadays, the concept of Social Exclusion is becoming very common in the analysis of Poverty. 3

#### Commonly Made Error

- Students are not aware about the views of Social Scientists.

#### Answering Tip

- Students should learn the Indicators by making a list and remembering the view of Social Scientists.

**Q. 5. Differentiate between 'Minimum Subsistence Level of Living' and a 'Reasonable Level of Living'.** R

(Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans. (i)** A "Minimum" Subsistence Level of Living contains food, cloth and shelter (the basic needs).

**(ii)** A 'Reasonable' Level of Living means not only food, cloth and shelter but also Health care, Education, Job Security and Self-confidence. (1½×2=3)

**Commonly Made Error**

- Most of the students mentioned the basic needs in Reasonable Level of Living.

**Answering Tip**

- Students should learn the differences by keeping in mind the key words.

**Q. 6. Discuss the trend of Poverty in India since 1973.**

U (Board Term II, 2016, KVS)

OR

Describe Poverty trends in India since 1973.

U [NCERT]

**Ans.** There has been a substantial decline in Poverty ratios in India from about 45 per cent in 1993-94 to 37.2 per cent in 2004-05. The proportion of people Below the Poverty Line further came down to about 22 per cent in 2011-12. If the trend continues, people below the Poverty line may come down to less than 20 per cent in the next few years. Although, the percentage of People living Under Poverty Line declined in the earlier two decades, yet the number of poor remained stable around 320 million for a fairly long period. The latest estimate indicates a significant reduction in the number of poor to about 26 million. 3

**Commonly Made Error**

- Many students mention the rise of people belonging to Poverty Line or below that.

**Answering Tip**

- Students must discuss the Decline of people belonging to Poverty Line or below since 1993.

**Q. 7. Mention the statistics related to Poverty problem of the Vulnerable Groups.** U

(Board Term II, 2013)

**Ans.** (i) Although the average people below the Poverty Line for all groups in India is 26 percent, yet 51 out of 100 people belonging to Scheduled Tribes are not able to meet their basic needs.

(ii) About 50 percent of casual workers in Urban areas are below Poverty line.

(iii) About 50 percent of Landless Agricultural Workers and 43 percent of SCs are poor.

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013) (1×3=3)

**Q. 8. What is poverty line? Give the Income for Poverty Line fixed for the Rural and Urban areas in India according to 2000.** R (Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.** A person is said to be poor if his or her Income or Consumption Level falls below a given minimum level necessary to fulfil basic needs. Each Country uses an imaginary Line that is considered appropriate for its existing level of Development and its accepted minimum social norms. In the year 2000, a Family of five Members living in Rural areas and earning less than about ₹ 1,640 per month were

below the Poverty Line, whereas in Urban areas earning less than about ₹ 2,270 per month in the similar Family were considered Living below the Poverty Line. 3

**Q. 9. Explain three ways in which Poverty can be estimated in India.** U (Board Term II, 2011)

OR

Describe how the Poverty Line is estimated in India. U (NCERT)

**Ans.** While determining the Poverty Line in India, a Minimum Level of food requirement, clothing, Footwear, fuel and light, Educational and medical requirement, etc., are determined for subsistence.

- The Calorie Requirement depending upon the age, sex, area and type of work is the way of estimating Poverty. Average Calorie requirement in India is 2,400 per person per day in Rural areas and 2,100 per person per day in Urban areas.
- Monetary Expenditure Per Capita needed is also a way of estimating Poverty. In the year 2000, the Poverty Line for a Person was fixed at ₹328 per month for the Rural areas and ₹454 for the Urban areas.
- A Uniform Standard for Poverty Line is also used, which is given by International Organisations like the World Bank. This is equivalent to \$ 1 per Person per day.

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011) (1×3=3)

**Note :** According to the changed data, the poverty lines was fixed at ₹ 816 per month for the Rural areas and ₹ 1000 per month for urban areas.

**Q. 10. What is meant by 'Vulnerability' to Poverty? Which economic categories are more vulnerable to Poverty in India?** R

**Ans.** **Vulnerability to poverty :** It is a measure which describes the greater probability of certain communities or individuals (such as a Widow or a Physically handicapped person) of becoming or remaining poor in coming years.

**Economic categories more vulnerable to Poverty in India :** Scheduled Tribes, Urban casual labourers, Rural agriculture labourers, Scheduled Castes are the major economic groups which are more vulnerable to Poverty. Among these, Scheduled Tribes contribute to 51 percent of Poverty in India. (1½+1½=3)

**Q. 11. "The proportion of people below Poverty Line is also not same for All Social Groups and economic categories in India." Explain.** A

**Ans.** (i) **Social Groups:** The Social Groups which are most vulnerable to Poverty are Scheduled Caste and Scheduled Tribe Households. Although the Average for people below Poverty Line for All Groups in India is 30, 48 out of 100 people belonging to Scheduled Tribes in Rural areas are not able to meet their basic needs.

(ii) **Economic groups:** Similarly among the economic groups, the most vulnerable groups are the Rural Agricultural Labour Households and the Urban Casual Labour Households.

**(iii) Inequality within Family:** Apart from these social groups, there is also Inequality of Incomes within a Family. In Poor families all suffer, but some suffer more than others. Women, elderly people and Female infants are systematically denied equal access to Resources available to the Family.

**Q. 12. Explain any three Social Indicators through which Poverty is looked upon.** R [O.E.B.]

**Ans.** Poverty today is looked upon through Social Indicators like Illiteracy level, lack of access to Health care, lack of Job Opportunities, etc.

- People are poor because they are Illiterate and they are Illiterate because they are Poor.
- Poverty is a situation where sick people cannot afford treatment, i.e., they lack access to Health Care.
- Poverty also implies lack of a Regular Job at a Minimum Decent Level. 3

**Q. 13. Explain the two methods to estimate Poverty line.** U [O.E.B.]

**Ans.** The two methods used to estimate Poverty Line are :

- Income method.** In this method, the Poverty Line is estimated with the help of Minimum Income Required. In the year 2011-12, the Poverty Line for a Person was fixed at ₹ 816 per month for the Rural areas and ₹ 1,000 per month for the Urban areas. The higher amount for Urban areas has been fixed because of high prices of essential products in Urban areas.
- Consumption method.** In this method, the Average Calorie Requirement of a person is multiplied to the Current prices. The accepted Average Calorie Requirement in India is 2,400 calories per person per day in Rural areas and 2,100 calories per Person per day in Urban Areas.

**Q. 14. Identify the social and economic groups which are most Vulnerable to Poverty in India.** [NCERT] R

**Ans.** Social groups, which are most vulnerable to Poverty, are Scheduled Caste and Scheduled Tribe Households. Similarly, among the economic groups, the most vulnerable groups are the Rural Agricultural Labour Households and Urban Casual Labour Households.

**Q. 15. How is the regular growth of population a major cause of Poverty in India ? Explain.** U

**(Board Term II, 2016)**

**Ans. (i)** Pressure on Resources has increased.

(ii) Unemployment has increased.

(iii) Led to increase in the rate of depletion of Resources.

(iv) The people belonging to below Poverty Line has increased.

(v) Growth rate of Per Capita Income has become low. (Any three)

**[CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016] (1×3=3)**

**Q. 16. "Poverty reduction is expected to mark better progress in the next ten to fifteen years." Justify the statement.** A (Board Term II, 2016)

**Ans.** (i) This is sure to happen.

(ii) This would be possible mainly due to higher economic growth, increasing stress on Universal Free Elementary Education.

(iii) Declining Population growth, increasing Empowerment of the Women and the economically weaker section of the society.

**(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2016) (1×3=3)**

**Q. 17. Explain the Principal measures taken in Punjab, Kerala and Andhra Pradesh to reduce Poverty.** U (Board Term II, 2011)

**Ans.** (i) The Principal measures taken in Punjab to reduce Poverty is increasing the Agricultural Growth Rates.

(ii) Kerala focussed more on Human Resource Development to reduce Poverty.

(iii) Andhra Pradesh focussed on Public Distribution of food grains to reduce Poverty.

**(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011) (1×3=3)**

**Q. 18. Explain the causes of Poverty.** U (Board Term II, 2016, KVS)

**OR**

**What are the main causes of Poverty in India?** U [Board Term II, 2011]

**Ans. Main causes of Poverty in India are :**

(i) Huge Income inequalities make it difficult for the Government Policies to implement properly for Poverty Elimination. Therefore, Income Inequality is a major cause of Poverty in India.

(ii) Exploitation of Traditional Indian Handicrafts and Textile Industries by British Colonial Administration is another major cause of Poverty.

(iii) In order to fulfil social obligations and observe Religious ceremonies, the Poor spend a lot of Money. Poor people borrow money for different reasons and become the Victims of Indebtedness.

**(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011) (1×3=3)**

**Q. 19. Write any three effects of economic growth on the People of India.** U

**(Board Term II, 2016)**

**Ans.** (i) Over a period of 30 years lasting up to the early 1980s, there was little Per Capita Income Growth and not much Reduction in Poverty.

(ii) Official Poverty estimates which were about 45 per cent in the early 1950s remained the same even in the early eighties.

(iii) Since the 1980s, India's economic growth has been one of the Fastest in the World.

(iv) The growth rates jumped from the average of about 3.5 per cent a year in the 1970s to about 6 per cent during the 1980s and 1990s.

- (v) The higher growth rates have helped significantly in the Reduction of Poverty.  
 (Any three) ( $1 \times 3 = 3$ )
- Q. 20. Name the two plans on which the current Anti-poverty Strategy of the Government is based.** B (Board Term II, 2016)
- Ans.** (i) Promotion of economic growth in the Country.  
 (ii) Targeted Anti-poverty programmes.  
 (for specific groups of people) ( $1\frac{1}{2} \times 2 = 3$ )
- Q. 21. Write a short note on Pradhan Mantri Gramodaya Yojana.** U (Board Term II, 2016)
- Ans.** (i) PMGY was introduced in 2000.  
 (ii) Its objective is to focus on village level Development in five critical areas, that is, Primary Health, Primary Education, Rural Shelter, Drinking Water and Roads. As a result of this, the Quality of Life of Rural people will improve. (1 + 2 = 3)
- Q. 22. List any three objectives of Swarnajayanti Gram Swarozgar Yojana.** A  
(Board Term II, 2016)
- Ans.** (i) It was started in 1999.  
 (ii) The Programme aims at bringing the assisted poor families above the Poverty Line.  
 (iii) It helps the Rural people to Organize themselves into Self-help groups through a mix of Bank Credit and Government Subsidy. (1 \times 3 = 3)
- Q. 23. How were the Policies of Colonial Government responsible for Poverty in India?** U  
(Board Term II, 2011)
- Ans.** Policies of Colonial Government are one of the historical reasons of Poverty after and at the time of British Colonial Administration. The Policies of the Colonial Government ruined Traditional Handicrafts and discouraged Development of Industries like Textiles. The low rate of growth persisted until the 1980s. This resulted in less Job Opportunities and low growth rate of Incomes. This was accompanied by a high growth rate of population. The two combined to make the growth rate of per capita Income very low. The failure at both the fronts – promotion of economic growth and population control – perpetuated the cycle of Poverty.  
(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011) (3)
- Q. 24. Give one positive and one negative side of Poverty conditions in India and mention the major Weaknesses of Poverty Alleviation Programmes.** U (Board Term II, 2011)
- Ans.** **Positive aspect :** India's economic growth is one of the Fastest in the World which helps in Reducing Poverty.  
**Negative aspect :** Large number of poor live in villages and are dependent upon Agriculture where growth is much below expectation.  
**Weakness of Poverty alleviation programme :** Lack of proper Implementation and Right targeting with lots of overlapping schemes.  
(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2011) (1 \times 3 = 3)
- Q. 25. 'One historical reason is the low level of economic Development under the British Colonial Administration.' Explain.** A
- Ans.** (i) The Policies of the Colonial Government ruined Traditional Handicrafts and discouraged development of Industries like Textiles.  
 (ii) The low rate of growth persisted until the 1980s. This resulted in less job Opportunities and low growth rate of Incomes.  
 (iii) This was accompanied by a high growth rate of population. The two combined to make the growth rate of per capita Income very low. The failure at both the fronts: promotion of economic growth and population control perpetuated the Cycle of Poverty. (1 \times 3 = 3)
- Q. 27. Describe Current Government Strategy of Poverty Alleviation.** U [NCERT]
- Ans.** To remove Poverty Government has adopted two approaches :  
 (i) **Indirect approach:** This covers achieving high economic growth rate, promotion of Small Scale Industries, Promotion of Agriculture. This approach is also referred to as trickle down effect. It was assumed that the Development of Industry and Agriculture would create Employment Opportunities and Income, which would lead to rapid Economic Development.  
 (ii) **Direct approach:** Under Direct approach Government has launched various Poverty alleviation programmes and food schemes to target the poor directly. (1\frac{1}{2} \times 2 = 3)
- AI **Q. 27. What are the major objectives of the Prime Minister Rozgar Yojana?**
- Ans.** (i) The Yojana was launched in 1993.  
 (ii) The aim of the Programme is to create self-Employment Opportunities for educated unemployed youth in Rural areas and small towns.  
 (iii) Under this unemployed are helped in setting up small Businesses and Industries.  
(1 \times 3 = 3)
- 
**Long Answer Type Questions**  
(5 Marks Each)
- Q. 1. Social exclusion can be both a cause as well as consequence of Poverty. Explain.** U  
(Board Term II, 2011)
- Ans.** Social exclusion can be seen in the terms of poors who have to live only in a poor surrounding with other poor people. Poor people are excluded from better surroundings with better-off people. For example, in India, people belonging to certain lower castes (*i.e.*, Scheduled Castes) are excluded from equal Opportunities. Poor people of certain castes have to live in a separate locality and are excluded from mixing with better-off people. Due to such discrimination, there comes a prevalent scene of inequality which leads to Poverty and can cause more damage than having a very low Income.

**Q. 2. Do you think that Present Methodology of Poverty Estimation is appropriate?** U (NCERT)

**Ans.** The Present Methodology of Poverty Estimation does not look appropriate. It only takes one factor in view and that is the economic factor. Moreover, it considers about a "Minimum" Subsistence level of living rather than a "Reasonable" level of living. Poverty has many dimensions. It is no longer confined to economic factors alone. With Development, the definitions of what constitutes Poverty also changes. Its concept has broadened to Human Poverty. A few persons may have been able to feed themselves but if they are without Education, without Shelter, without Health-care, without Job security, without Self-confidence, without Social equality, they are considered Poor. If Poverty is to be removed in real sense and the people are to be brought above the Poverty line, not only that we need to increase their Income but also, we have to provide the people with Education, Shelter, Health-care, Job-security, Respect and Dignity.

**Q. 3. Describe the Global Poverty Trends.** A  
(Board Term II, 2013 NCERT)

**Ans.** (i) The proportion of people living in extreme Poverty has fallen from 25 percent in the year 1990 to 21 percent in the year 2001.  
(ii) Poverty has declined substantially in China and South East Asian countries as a result of rapid economic growth.  
(iii) The number of poor has fallen from 606 million in 1981 to 212 million in 2001.  
(iv) However, in some countries of South Asia (India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Nepal, Bangladesh and Bhutan), the fall has been marginal.  
(v) In Sub-Saharan Africa, Poverty actually rose from 41 percent in 1981 to 46 percent in 2001.

**(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2013) (1×5=5)**

**Q. 4. Give a brief account of Inter-state disparities of Poverty in India.** A  
(Board Term II, 2010) (NCERT)

**Ans.** (i) Proportion of poor people is not the same in every State.  
(ii) In 20 States and Union Territories, the Poverty Ratio is less than National Average.  
(iii) In the states of Odisha, Bihar, Assam, Tripura and Uttar Pradesh, Poverty is a serious problem. Along with Rural Poverty, Urban Poverty is also high in these States.  
(iv) While in the states like Kerala, Jammu and Kashmir, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, there is a significant decline in Poverty.  
(v) States like Punjab and Haryana have succeeded in reducing Poverty with the help of high Agricultural growth rates.  
(vi) In West Bengal, land reform measures have helped in Reducing Poverty.

**(Any five)**  
**(1×5=5)**

### Commonly Made Error

- Some students have an overall Idea of Poverty in India. They are not aware about State wise Statistics of Poverty.

### Answering Tip

- Students should discuss about the Status of Poverty in the different States of India.

**Q. 5. Describe Current Government Strategy of Poverty Alleviation.** U (KVS 2018-19)

**OR**

**Explain any five Anti-poverty measures taken by the Government of India.** U

**(Board Term II, 2017)**

**OR**

**Describe in brief the important Poverty Alleviation Programmes undertaken by the Government of India.** A (Board Term II, 2015 KVS)

**Ans.** The current Anti-poverty Strategy of the Government is based broadly on two planks :

- Promotion of economic growth.
- Targeted Anti-poverty Programmes.

**Important anti-Poverty programmes which are in operation in Rural and Urban areas :**

- Prime Minister Rojgar Yojana (PMRY) :** PMRY, was launched on 2<sup>nd</sup> October, 1993. The aim of this programme is to create self-Employment Opportunities for educated youth in Rural areas and small towns. They are helped in setting up Small Businesses and Industries.
- Swarnajayanti Gram Swarajgar Yojana (SGSY) :** SGSY was launched on 1<sup>st</sup> April, 1999. It aims at promoting enterprises at the village level. It helps the Rural people to organise themselves into self-help groups. The objective of SGSY is to bring the existing poor families above the Poverty Line by providing them Income generating assets through Bank Credit and Government Subsidy.
- Pradhan Mantri Gramodaya Yojana (PMGY) :** PMGY was introduced in 2000. Its objective is to focus on Village Level Development in five critical areas, that is, Primary Health, Primary Education, Rural Shelter, Rural Drinking Water and Rural Roads. As a result of this, the Quality of Life of Rural People will improve.
- National Rural Employment Guarantee Act (NREGA) :** NREGA was passed in August 2005. The Act provides for 100 days assured Employment to every Rural Household in 200 Districts. Later, the Scheme will be extended to 600 Districts.
- National Food for Work Programme (NFWP) :** This was launched in 2004 in 150 most Backward Districts of the Country. The Programme is open to all Rural Poor who are in need of Wage Employment

and desire to do manual unskilled work. Once the NREGA is in force, the NWFP will be subsumed within this Programme. **(1 × 5 = 5)**

**Commonly Made Error**

- Generally, students write wrong full forms and Names of Programmes.

**Answering Tip**

- Learn the full forms by heart and discuss the major functions of PMRY, SGSY, PMGY, NREGA, NFWP Programmes.

**Q. 6. Describe the major reasons of Poverty in India. [U]**

(Board 2017, Term II)

OR

**Discuss the major reasons for Poverty in India.**

[U] [NCERT]

**Ans. The major reasons for Poverty in India can be grouped as follows :**

- Inequalities in Income distribution :** Huge Income inequalities make it difficult for the Government Policies to implement properly for Poverty Elimination.
- British Colonial Administration :** Exploitation of Traditional Indian Handicrafts and Textile Industries by British Colonial Administration. The Policies of the Colonial Government ruined Traditional Handicrafts and discouraged Development of Industries like Textiles.

**(iii) Population explosion :** The low rate of growth of Industries persisted until the 1980s. This resulted in less job Opportunities and low growth rate of Incomes. This was accompanied by a high growth rate of population.

**(iv) Slow growth in Agriculture and Industry :** With the spread of irrigation and the Green Revolution, many job Opportunities were created in the agriculture sector. But the effects were very limited in India.

**(v) Extravagance and Indebtedness :** In order to fulfil Social Obligations and observe Religious Ceremonies, the poor spend a lot of money. Poor people borrow money for different reasons and become the Victims of Indebtedness. **(1 × 5 = 5)**

(CBSE Marking Scheme, 2017)

**Q. 7. Give the main features of REGP. [U]**

(Board Term II, 2014)

**Ans.** The Rural Employment Guarantee Programme (REGP), is implemented through the Khadi and Village Industries Commission (KVIC), to help Eligible Entrepreneurs to set up Village Industry Units and thus create Employment Opportunities in villages including small towns with population up to 20,000.

Under this Programme, Entrepreneurs can establish Village Industries by availing of marginal money assistance from KVIC and Loans from Public sector Scheduled Commercial Banks, Selected Regional Cooperative Banks, etc., for projects with a maximum costs of ₹ 25 lakh.



**@NtseBookCorner**  
Join Us On Telegram



# PRACTICE PAPER - 1



**Maximum Time : 2 hours**

**MM : 40**

## General Instructions:

### Section A

- (i) Question numbers 1 to 6 are Multiple type questions carrying 1 mark each.
- (ii) Question numbers 7 and 9 are Assertion-Reason Based questions carrying 1 mark each.
- (iii) Question numbers 10 is Case Based/ having Multiple Choice Questions. The Question has 4 sub-parts.

### Section B

- (i) Short Answer type question carrying 3 marks each (11 to 14). Answer should not exceed 80 words each.
- (ii) Long Answer type questions carrying 5 marks each (Question 15 and 16). Answer should not exceed 250 words each.
- (iii) Question number 17 is a Map question that includes the identification and location of places. Attach the Map with the Answer book.

## SECTION – A

### I. Stand Alone MCQs (1 mark each) 6

1. Who was Marfa Vasileva?
  - (A) She was the leader of the Revolutionaries.
  - (B) She was a brave worker who organised a successful strike.
  - (C) She threw a bomb at the Russian Tsar.
  - (D) None of the above
2. In the context of Germany, what was 'Volkswagen'?
  - (A) Luxury vehicle
  - (B) Sports vehicle
  - (C) Vehicle of people below the poverty line
  - (D) People's car
3. Zaskar and Nubra are important tributaries of which river?
  - (A) Narmada River
  - (B) Indus River
  - (C) Satluj River
  - (D) Ganga River
4. Mango showers occur in which group of two states?
  - (A) Kerala and Karnataka
  - (B) Kerala and Tamil Nadu
  - (C) Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh
  - (D) Tamil Nadu and Kerala
5. Which is the natural habitat of the Indian lion?
  - (A) Kaziranga
  - (B) Gir Forest National Park
  - (C) Corbett National Park
  - (D) Ranthambore National Park
6. Who led the 'Nyaya Yudh'?
  - (A) Bhimrao Ambedkar

- (B) Chaudhary Devi Lal
- (C) Dr. Rajendra Prasad
- (D) Motilal Nehru

OR

Which Industry suffered the most during the Colonial period?

- |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| (A) Agriculture | (B) Raw Materials |
| (C) Textiles.   | (D) Manufacturing |

### II. Assertion/Reason Based Questions (1 mark) 3

**Directions :** In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as :

- (A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of (A).
- (B) Both A and R are true, but R is NOT the correct explanation of (A).
- (C) A is true but R is false.
- (D) A is false and R is true.

**7. Assertion (A) :** Socialists were against Private Property and saw it as the root of all social ills of the time.

**Reason (R) :** The Propertied were concerned only with personal gain and not with the welfare of those who made the property productive.

**8. Assertion (A) :** Nazi ideas were spread only through newspapers.

**Reason (R) :** The Nazis made equal efforts to appeal to all the different sections of the population.

**9. Assertion (A) :** The Ganga is joined by many tributaries from the Himalayas, a few of them being major rivers, such as the Yamuna, the Ghaghara, the Gandak and the Kosi.

**Reason (R) :** The Ghaghara, the Gandak and the Kosi rise in the Nepal Himalaya.

**III. Case-based MCQs****(1×4=4)**

One of the groups which looked to change society were the liberals. Liberals wanted a nation which tolerated all religions. We should remember that at this time European states usually discriminated in favour of one religion or another (Britain favoured the Church of England, Austria and Spain favoured the Catholic Church). Liberals also opposed the uncontrolled power of Dynastic rulers. They wanted to safeguard the rights of individuals against governments. They argued for a representative elected Parliamentary government, subject to laws interpreted by a well-trained judiciary that was independent of Rulers and Officials. However, they were not 'Democrats'. They did not believe in Universal Adult Franchise, that is, the right of every citizen to vote. They felt men of property mainly should have the vote. They also did not want the vote for women.

**10. Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option :**

- (i) \_\_\_\_\_ became one of the most significant and powerful ideas to shape society in the twentieth century, through the revolution in Russia.  
 (A) Communism      (B) Socialism  
 (C) Dictatorship      (D) Democracy
- (ii) Liberals wanted a nation which tolerated \_\_\_\_\_ :  
 (A) no religion      (B) one religion  
 (C) few religions      (D) all religions
- (iii) Which countries favoured the Catholic Church?  
 (A) France and Spain      (B) Spain and Italy  
 (C) Austria and Spain      (D) Spain and Germany

**VI. Map Questions****(2+3=5)**

17. (i) On the given political map of the world, locate and label –

Germany

**[2]**

(ii) Identify the nation that was an Axis Power during World War II.



- (iv) What was the suffragette?  
 (A) Women's movement  
 (B) Property tax  
 (C) Land acquisition  
 (D) Proletariat class

**SECTION – B****IV. Short Answer Type Questions (3 × 4 = 12)**

11. In what ways were working population of Russia different from other countries in Europe before 1917?
12. Where is Mawsynram located ? Why does Mawsynram receive the highest amount of rainfall?
13. Describe the process of campaigning in election in India.
14. Give any three functions (or responsibilities) of the Government.

**OR**

"In poor families, all suffer, but some suffer more than others." Explain the statement.

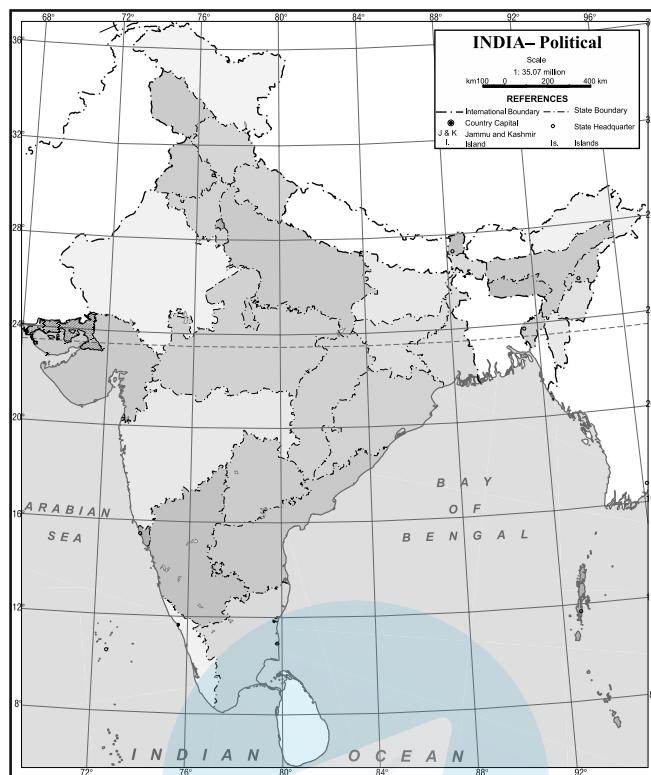
**V. Long Answer Type Questions (5+5 = 10)**

15. What type of dangers does the Wildlife Sanctuaries of India face? How can they be protected better? Write a brief note on each.
16. Compare the powers of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.

**OR**

Explain the status of women in the German Society under Nazism.

(iii) On the given Outline Map of India locate and label the following Wildlife Sanctuaries and National Park : [3]



- (A) A wildlife sanctuary in Rajasthan.
- (B) A National park in Assam.
- (C) National park in Madhya Pradesh.

3

**@NtseBookcorner**

Finished Solving the Paper ?  
Time to evaluate yourself !

**OSWAAL COGNITIVE  
LEARNING TOOLS**

OR

For detailed solutions  
scan the QR code

A cartoon boy is shown with various school-related icons (pencil, paper, ruler, calculator, etc.) floating around him, suggesting a learning environment.

## PRACTICE PAPER - 2



**Maximum Time : 2 hours**

**MM : 40**

### General Instructions:

#### Section A

- (i) Question numbers 1 to 6 are Multiple type questions carrying 1 mark each.
- (ii) Question numbers 7 and 9 are Assertion-Reason Based questions carrying 1 mark each.
- (iii) Question numbers 10 is Case Based/ having Multiple Choice Questions. The Question has 4 sub-parts.

#### Section B

- (i) Short Answer type question carrying 3 marks each (11 to 14). Answer should not exceed 80 words each.
- (ii) Long Answer type questions carrying 5 marks each (Question 15 and 16). Answer should not exceed 250 words each.
- (iii) Question number 17 is a Map question that includes the identification and location of places. Attach the Map with the Answer book.

### SECTION – A

#### I. Stand Alone MCQs (1 mark each) 6

1. Who advocated that India would be truly independent only when the poorest of its people become free of human suffering?
- (A) Mahatma Gandhi (B) Rajeev Gandhi  
 (C) Indira Gandhi (D) B. R. Ambedkar

2. Who is the Head of the State and the highest formal authority in the country?
- (A) The Prime Minister  
 (B) The President  
 (C) Speaker of Lok Sabha  
 (D) Home Minister

3. Who implements the Code of Conduct?
- (A) The Election Commission  
 (B) General Public  
 (C) Prime Minister  
 (D) Supreme Court

4. Which animal lives in the swampy and marshy lands of Assam and West Bengal?
- (A) Monkeys  
 (B) Camels  
 (C) One-horned Rhinoceroses  
 (D) Lions

5. Which part of India experiences the highest range of temperature in a day?
- (A) Gujarat

(B) Madhya Pradesh

(C) Uttar Pradesh

(D) Thar Desert in Rajasthan

6. Which one of the following lakes is a salt water lake?

- |             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| (A) Sambhar | (B) Wular        |
| (C) Dal     | (D) Govind Sagar |

OR

Workers in England and Germany began to form association to fight for \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) limited working hours  
 (B) better living and working conditions  
 (C) right to vote  
 (D) All of the above

#### II. Assertion/Reason Based Questions (1 mark) 3

**Directions :** In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as :

- (A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (B) Both A and R are true, but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.
- (C) A is true but R is false.
- (D) A is false and R is true.

7. **Assertion (A) :** The year 1904 was a particularly bad one for Russian workers.

**Reason (R) :** During the 1905 Revolution, the Tsar allowed the creation of an elected consultative Parliament or Duma.

**8. Assertion (A) :** The USA was unwilling to join World War II.

**Reason (R) :** The USA feared the comeback of economic problems that the First World War had caused.

**9. Assertion (A) :** 'Western Disturbances' disturb the calm and quite weather of North and North-western India by causing cyclonic rains over the plains and snowfall in the mountains.

**Reason (R) :** Winter rainfall caused by them locally known as 'Mahawat' is of immense importance for the cultivation of Rabi crops.

### **III. Case-based MCQs (4 marks): 2 (one case) 4**

**10. Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option. (1 × 4 = 4)**

Like its flora, India is also rich in its fauna. It has approximately 90,000 animal species. The country has about 2,000 species of birds. They constitute 13% of the world's total. There are 2,546 species of fish, which account for nearly 12% of the world's stock. It also shares between 5 and 8 per cent of the world's amphibians, reptiles and mammals.

The elephants are the most majestic animals among the mammals. They are found in the hot wet forests of Assam, Karnataka and Kerala. One-horned rhinoceroses are the other animals, which live in swampy and marshy land of Assam and West Bengal. Arid areas of the Rann of Kachchh and the Thar Desert are the habitat for wild ass and camels respectively. Indian bison, nilgai (blue bull), chousingha (four-horned antelope), gazelle and different species of deer are some other animals found in India. It also has several species of monkeys.

India is the only country in the world that has both tigers and lions. The natural habitat of the Indian lion is the Gir forest in Gujarat. Tigers are found in the forests of Madhya Pradesh, the Sunderbans of West Bengal and the Himalayan region. Leopards, too, are members of the cat family. They are important among animals of prey.

**Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option.**

**(i) How many animal species are there?**

- (A) 70,000
- (B) 80,000
- (C) 60,000
- (D) 90,000

**(ii) Fish account to nearly \_\_\_\_\_ of the world's stock.**

- (A) 14%
- (B) 12%
- (C) 11%
- (D) 15%

**(iii) Which animal is found in hot-wet forests of Assam, Karnataka and Kerala?**

- (A) Elephant
- (B) Tiger
- (C) Deer
- (D) Giraffe

**(iv) The natural habitat of the Indian lion Gir is in \_\_\_\_\_.**

- (A) Rajasthan
- (B) Madhya Pradesh
- (C) Maharashtra
- (D) Gujarat

### **SECTION – B**

### **IV. Short Answer Type Questions (3 × 4 = 12)**

**11. Explain any three effects of the Treaty of Versailles over Germany.**

**12. Which river is known as the Dakshin Ganga? State any two characteristics of it.**

**13. Describe the role played by the contemporary Prime Minister of India in the implementation of the Mandal Commission Report.**

**14. Explain the principal measures taken in Punjab, Kerala and Andhra Pradesh to reduce poverty.**

### **V. Long Answer Type Questions (5+5 = 10)**

**15. Describe the major reasons of poverty in India.**

**16. Describe February Revolution of 1917 and October Revolution of 1917 in brief.**

**OR**

**Describe any five features of Montane Forests of India.**

**VI. Map Questions**

(2+3=5)

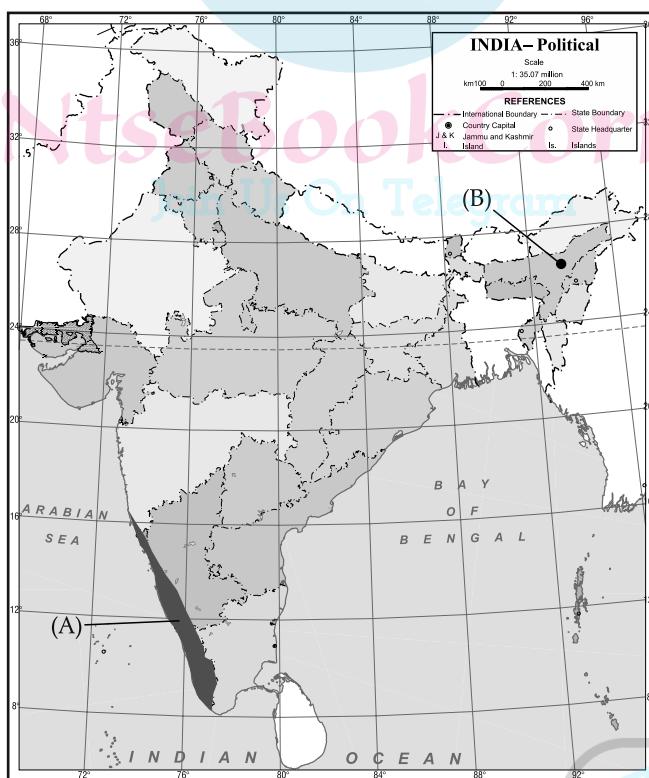
17. (1) On the given political map of the world, locate and label: France [2]

(2) Identify the territory that was under German expansion- Nazi power.



(ii) (a) On an outline map of India, identify A &amp; B on the basis of the information given below. Write their correct names too. [3]

(A) Type of vegetation (B) A national park famous for one horned Rhinoceros.

(b) On the same political outline map of India, locate and label the following feature with appropriate symbol.  
—Wular lake.



::



@NtseBookCorner  
Join Us On Telegram



## WRITING NOTES

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....
7. ....
8. ....
9. ....
10. ....
11. ....
12. ....
13. ....
14. ....
15. ....
16. ....
17. ....
18. ....
19. ....
20. ....
21. ....
22. ....
23. ....
24. ....
25. ....



@NtseBookCorner

Join Us On Telegram



Want to face CBSE Term-II Exams stress free?

# Oswaal360

is the most helpful platform for you to  
practice & perfect!



Get e-Assessments on the latest Typologies  
of Questions as per Term-II syllabus  
With **Real-Time Analysis** and **LIVE Scores**

**Start practicing now!**

Visit [Oswaal360.com](https://www.oswaal360.com)

or scan the QR code



to download the app  
 NtseBookCorner

[@Cbsebookshub - Join Us on Telegram](https://t.me/Cbsebookshub)



## CBSE SAMPLE QUESTION PAPER For Class IX BENEFITS

- 10 sets of Sample Papers strictly designed as per the latest CBSE Syllabus
- All Typologies Questions including Objective Types-MCQs, Assertion Reason & Case based & Subjective Questions-VSA, SA & LA
- Hybrid Edition with Print & Online Support
  - Modified & Empowered Mind Maps
  - 150+ Concept Oswaal Videos

### SUBJECTS AVAILABLE IN THIS SERIES

- ENGLISH
- SCIENCE
- MATHEMATICS
- SOCIAL SCIENCE
- HINDI-A
- HINDI-B
- SANSKRIT
- COMPUTER APPLICATION

